# **Quick Start Guide & Manual TECHV SION USA**



MOBILE APPS FREE MOBILE APPS FOR ANDRIOD AND IOS



FREE TECH SUPPORT FAST SERVICE SUPPORT





# Quick Start Guide

## Foreword

#### Welcome

Thank you for purchasing our Digital Video Recorder (DVR).

This Quick Start Guide (hereinafter referred to be "the Guide") will help you become familiar with our DVR in a short time. Please read the Guide carefully before starting using your DVR and properly keep it for future reference.

#### Important Safeguards and Warnings

#### **Operation Requirement**

- Do not place or install the Device in a place exposed to sunlight or near the heat source.
- Keep the Device away from dampness, dust or soot.
- Keep the Device installed horizontally on the stable place to prevent it from falling.
- Do not drop or splash liquid onto the Device, and make sure there is no object filled with liquid on the Device to prevent liquid from flowing into the Device.
- Install the Device in a well-ventilated place, and do not block the ventilation of the Device.
- Operate the device within the rated range of power input and output.
- Do not dissemble the Device.
- Transport, use and store the Device under the allowed humidity and temperature conditions.

#### **Electrical Safety**

- Improper battery use might result in fire, explosion, or inflammation.
- When replacing battery, make sure the same model is used.
- Use the recommended power cables in the region and conform to the rated power specification.
- Use the power adapter provided with the Device; otherwise, it might result in people injury and device damage.
- The power source shall conform to the requirement of the Safety Extra Low Voltage (SELV) standard, and supply power with rated voltage which conforms to Limited power Source requirement according to IEC60950-1. Please note that the power supply requirement is subject to the device label.
- Connect the device (I-type structure) to the power socket with protective earthing.
- The appliance coupler is a disconnection device. When using the coupler, keep the angle for easy operation.

#### Safety Instructions

The following categorized signal words with defined meaning might appear in the Guide.

Signal Words	Meaning

Signal Words	Meaning
	Indicates a potential risk which, if not avoided, could result in property damage, data loss, lower performance, or unpredictable result.
	Provides additional information as the emphasis and supplement to the text.

#### **Privacy Protection Notice**

As the device user or data controller, you might collect personal data of others such as face, fingerprints, car plate number, Email address, phone number, GPS and so on. You need to be in compliance with the local privacy protection laws and regulations to protect the legitimate rights and interests of other people by implementing measures include but not limited to: providing clear and visible identification to inform data subject the existence of surveillance area and providing related contact.

#### About the Guide

- The Guide is for reference only. If there is inconsistency between the Guide and the actual product, the actual product shall prevail.
- We are not liable for any loss caused by the operations that do not comply with the Guide.
- The Guide would be updated according to the latest laws and regulations of related regions. For detailed information, see the paper manual, CD-ROM, QR code or our official website. If there is inconsistency between paper User's Manual and the electronic version, the electronic version shall prevail.
- All the designs and software are subject to change without prior written notice. The product updates might cause some differences between the actual product and the Guide. Please contact the customer service for the latest program and supplementary documentation.
- There still might be deviation in technical data, functions and operations description, or errors in print. If there is any doubt or dispute, please refer to our final explanation.
- Upgrade the reader software or try other mainstream reader software if the Guide (in PDF format) cannot be opened.
- All trademarks, registered trademarks and the company names in the Guide are the properties of their respective owners.
- Please visit our website, contact the supplier or customer service if there is any problem occurred when using the device.
- If there is any uncertainty or controversy, please refer to our final explanation.

# Table of Contents

ForewordI	I
1 Quick Start 1	
1.1 Unpacking the Accessories1	
1.2 Checking the Components1	
1.3 Installing Hard Disk Drive (HDD) 2	
1.4 Booting up	
2 The Grand Tour for Rear Panel	)
3 Local Configurations	
3.1 Initializing DVR	,
3.2 Resetting Password	i
3.3 Adding Remote Device 12	
3.4 Configuring Recording Storage Schedule 13	,
3.5 Playing Back Recorded Video 14	
3.6 Configuring P2P Settings15	)
3.6.1 Entering P2P Interface15	,
3.6.2 Adding DVR into Cell Phone Client16	ì
3.7 Logout	,
4 Web Login	I

#### 

The actual appearance or quantity might be different depending on the model you purchased.

#### **1.1 Unpacking the Accessories**



#### **1.2 Checking the Components**

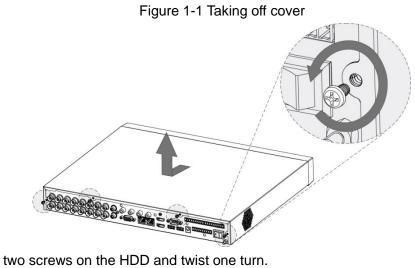
When you receive the DVR, please check against the following checking list. If any of the items are missing or damaged, contact the local retailer or after-sales engineer immediately.

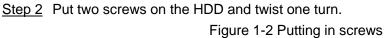
Sequence	Checking items		Requirement		
	Package	Appearance	No obvious damage.		
1		Packing materials	No broken or distorted positions that could be caused by hit.		
2	Labels Labels on the device		Not torn up. Not torn up. NOTE Do not tear up or throw away the labels; otherwise the warranty services are not ensured. You need to provide the serial number of the product when calling the after-sales service.		
3	Device	Appearance	No obvious damage.		
		Data cables, power cables, fan cables, and mainboard	No loose connection.		

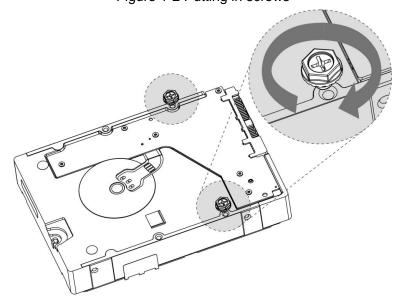
#### 1.3 Installing Hard Disk Drive (HDD)

Please check whether the HDD is already installed for the first use. Please use enterprise HDD or surveillance HDD instead of PC HDD.

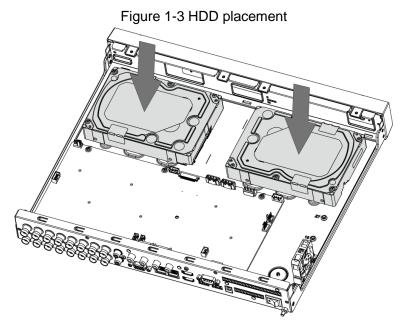
Shut down the DVR and unplug the power cable before opening the cover to replace the HDD. <u>Step 1</u> Remove the screws to take off the cover.





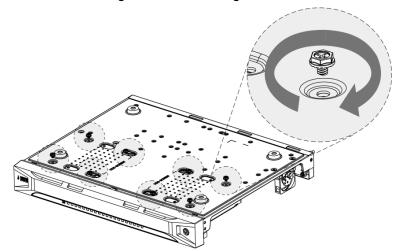


<u>Step 3</u> Align the two screws with the holes on the device.



<u>Step 4</u> Turn the device and put in the other two screws, and then fasten all screws to fix the HDD to the device.

Figure 1-4 HDD fixing to device

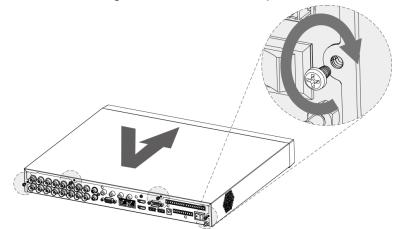


<u>Step 5</u> Use power cable and data cable to connect the device and HDD.

Figure 1-5 Cables connection

<u>Step 6</u> Put back the cover and fasten the screws.

Figure 1-6 Installation completed



#### 1.4 Booting up



- Ensure the input voltage corresponds to the power requirement of the DVR. Turn on the DVR after the power cable is properly connected.
- To protect the DVR, connect the DVR with the power cable first, and then connect to the power source.
- To ensure the stable work of the DVR and the connected external devices such as camera and to prolong the HDD service life, please refer to the related international standard to use the power source that provides stable voltage with less ripple interference. UPS power source is recommended.
- <u>Step 1</u> Connect the DVR to a display.
- <u>Step 2</u> Plug in the power cable to the DVR.
- Step 3 Press the power button to turn on the DVR. The power indicator glows.

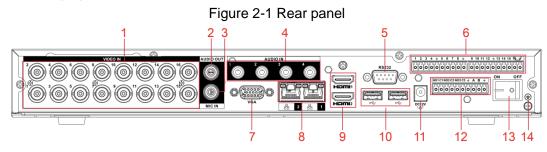
On the connected display, the live view screen is displayed. If you turn on the DVR during the time period that is configured for recording, the system starts recording after it is turned on, and you will see the icon indicating recording status in specific channels.

# The Grand Tour for Rear Panel

#### 

The actual appearance might be different depending on the model you purchased.

The following figure shows the rear panel of the DVR.



No.	Port Name	Function	
1	Video input port	Connects to analog camera to input video signal.	
2	Audio output port	Outputs audio signal to the devices such as the sound box.	
3	MIC IN	Two-way talk input port which receives analog audio signal output from the devices such as microphone and pickup.	
4	Audio input port	Receives audio signal output from the devices such as microphone.	
5	RS-232 debug COM The port is used for general COM debug to configure IP add or transfer transparent COM data.		
Alarm input port 6 1–16		4 groups of alarm input ports (Group 1: port 1 to port 4; Group 2: port 5 to port 8; Group 3: port 9 to port 12; Group 4: port 13 to port 16). These ports receive the signal from the external alarm source. There are two types: NO (normal open) and NC (normal close). NOTE When your alarm input device is using external power, please make sure the input device and the DVR connect to the same ground.	
	ŧ	Ground terminal.	
7	VGA port	Outputs analog video data to the connected display with VGA port.	
8	Network port	Connects to Ethernet port.	
9	HDMI port	High definition audio and video signal output port. The port outputs the uncompressed high definition video and multi-channel audio data to the connected display with HDMI port.	
10	USB port Connects to the external devices such as keyboard, mouse, a USB storage device.		

No.	Port Name	Function
11	Power input port	Inputs power.
12	Alarm output port 1– 5 (NO1–NO5; C1–C5; NC5)	<ul> <li>5 groups of alarm output ports (Group 1: port NO1– C1,Group 2:port NO2–C2,Group 3:port NO3–C3, Group 4: port NO4–C4, Group 5: port NO5, C5, NC5). These ports output alarm signal to the alarm device. Please make sure power supply to the external alarm device.</li> <li>NO: Normal open alarm output port.</li> <li>C: Alarm output public end.</li> <li>NC: Normal close alarm output port.</li> </ul>
13	Power button	Turns on/off the DVR.
14	Ŧ	Ground.



Please read the following notes prior to using your DVR.

III NOTE

- The interfaces in the Guide are used for introducing the operations and only for reference. The actual product shall govern.
- For details about operations of the DVR, see User's Manual.
- To enter the Main Menu, right-click on the live view screen to display the shortcut menu, and then click **Main Menu** and login the system.

#### 3.1 Initializing DVR

When booting up for the first time, the **Device Initialization** interface is displayed, see Figure 3-1. You need to configure the password information for the **admin** (by default). If needed, you can also configure the unlock pattern and password protection mode, see Figure 3-2 and Table 3-1.

- The new password can be set from 8 characters through 32 characters and contains at least two types from number, letter and special characters (excluding"", """, ";", ":" and "&"). Please enter a strong password according to the password strength bar indication.
- To secure your DVR, it is strongly recommended to properly keep the password for admin and modify it periodically.

			eetiinig		
Device Initialization					
1. Enter Password	<b>→</b>	2. Unlock Pattern	<b>→</b>	3. Password Protection	
User Password Confirm Password Prompt Question	admin		characters, it ( letter(s), numl with at least tw	rd that has 8 to 32 can be a combination of per(s) and symbol(s) vo kinds of them at use special symbols	
				Next	

Figure 3-1 Password setting

Device Initialization		
1. Enter Passwo	ord $\rightarrow$ 2. Unlock Pattern $\rightarrow$ 3. Password Protection	on
Email Address Security Questions	To reset password, please input properly update in time	or
Question 1 Answer	What is your favorite children's book?	
Question 2	What was the first name of your first boss?	
Answer Question 3	What is the name of your favorite fruit?	
Answer		
	Save	

Figure 3-2 Password protection

Table 3-1 Password protection mode description

Password	Description			
Protection Mode	Description			
	Enter the reserved email address.			
Email Address	In the Email Address box, enter an email address for password reset. In			
Email Address	case you forgot password, enter the security code that you will get from			
	this reserved email address to reset the password of admin.			
Security Questions	Configure the security questions and answers. In case you forgot password, enter the answers to the questions can make			
	you reset the password.			
If you want to configure the email or security questions function later or you want to change the				
configurations, select Main Menu > ACCOUNT > USER.				

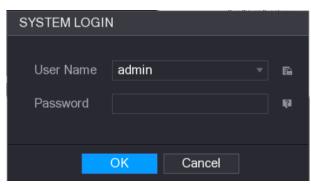
#### 3.2 Resetting Password

You can reset the password by the following methods when you forgot the password for admin account.

- If the password reset function is enabled, you can use mobile phone to scan the QR code to reset the password.
- If the password reset function is disabled, there are two situations:
  - If you configured security questions, you can find back the password by the security questions.
  - If you did not configure the security questions, you can only use the reset button on the mainboard to restore the Device to factory default.

Not all models are provided with reset button.

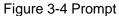
- Step 1 Enter the login interface.
  - If you have configured unlock pattern, the unlock pattern login interface is displayed. Click Forgot Pattern, the password login interface is displayed. See Figure 3-3.
  - If you did not configure unlock pattern, the password login interface is displayed. See Figure 3-3.

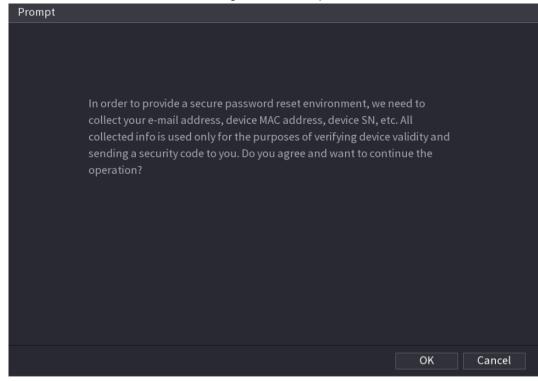


#### Figure 3-3 System login

### Step 2 Click

- If you did not set the reserved email address, the email entering interface is displayed. Enter the email address, and then click **Next**, the **Prompt** message interface is displayed. See Figure 3-4.
- If you have set the reserved email address, the **Prompt** message interface is displayed. See Figure 3-4.



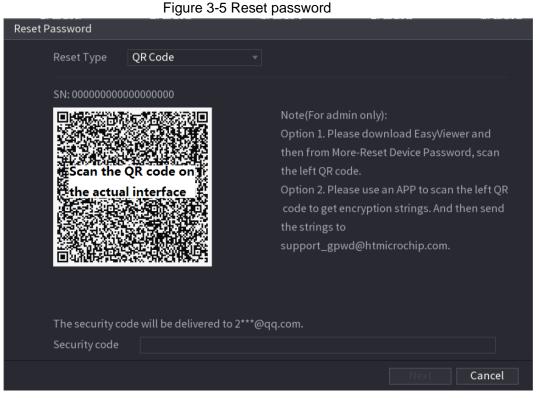




The **Reset Password** interface is displayed. See Figure 3-5.

#### 

After clicking **OK**, the system will collect your information for password reset, and the information includes but not limited to email address, MAC address, and device serial number. Please read the prompt carefully before clicking **OK**.



<u>Step 4</u> Reset the password.

QR code

Scan the QR code on the actual interface, and then follow the onscreen instructions to get the security code in your reserved email address. In the **Security code** box, enter the security code.



- You can get the security code twice by scanning the same QR code. If you need to get the security code once again, please refresh the interface.
- Please use the security code received in your email box to reset the password within 24 hours; otherwise the security code becomes invalid.
- Security questions
- On the Reset password interface as shown in Figure 3-4, in the Reset Type list, select Security Questions, the Security Questions interface is displayed. See Figure 3-6.

If you did not configure the security questions before, in the **Reset Type** list, there is no **Security Questions**.

2) In the Answer box, enter the correct answers.

Reset Password	
Reset Type	Security Questions 👻
Question 1 Answer	
Question 2 Answer	
Question 3 Answer	
	Next Cancel

<u>Step 5</u> Click **Next** and then follow the onscreen instructions to complete the password resetting.

#### 3.3 Adding Remote Device

You can add remote devices by adding the IP address.

DI NOTE

This function is available after having configured the channel type as IP channel by selecting **Main Menu > CAMERA > CHANNEL TYPE**.

```
<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > CAMERA > REGISTRATION > Registration.
```

The **Registration** interface is displayed.

Step 2 Click IP Search.

The searched devices are displayed.

- <u>Step 3</u> Add the device by either of the following ways.
  - Double-click the device, or select the check box of the device and then click Add.
  - Click Manual Add, configure the parameters and then click Apply.

The device is displayed in the Added Device area. See Figure 3-7.

Figure 3-6 Security questions

					LIVE	
IMAGE	Registration	Status	Firmware	Upgrade		
ENCODE	Uninitialized	Initi	alize	Show Filter		IPC 🔻
OVERLAY	33	Edit Pre	view Statu	is IP <i>i</i>	Address -	Mar <b></b>
PTZ	21			192	2.168.3.133	
CHANNEL TYPE	22			192	2.168.3.135	
DECISTRATION	23			19	2.168.3.136	
REGISTRATION	24			19	2.168.3.138	
COAXIAL UPGRADE					2.168.3.139	
	26		VE 🗸	19	2.168.4.20	
	IP Search				Add	Manual Add
	Added Devic	e				
	Chanr	iel Edit	Delete	Status	IP Addre	ess
	10	ľ	<u></u>	•	192.168.	3.133
	<b>1</b> 1				192.168.	3.136
	12				192.168	.3.138
		Residue bandw	idth/Total bandwidth:	51.50Mbps/61	Import	Export

Figure 3-7 Added device

#### 3.4 Configuring Recording Storage Schedule

Select **Main Menu > STORAGE > SCHEDULE > Record**, the **Record** interface is displayed, see Figure 3-8.

The default setting is 24 hours recording for all channels. You can modify the settings if needed.

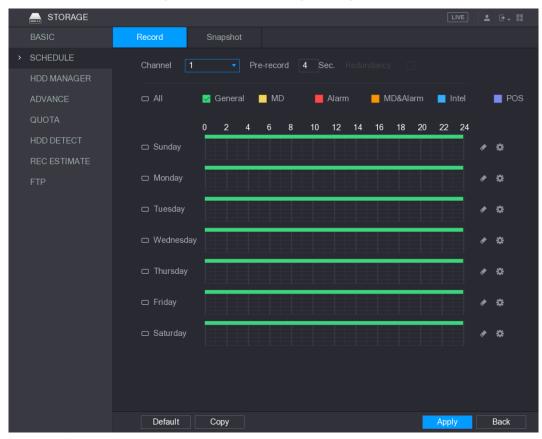


Figure 3-8 Record storage configuration

#### 3.5 Playing Back Recorded Video

You can search for and play back the recorded videos saved on the DVR.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > VIDEO.

The video search interface is displayed. See Figure 3-9.

#### Figure 3-9 Recorded video



- <u>Step 2</u> Select the source as **From R/W HDD** or **From I/O Device** from where you want to search for the recorded video.
- <u>Step 3</u> In the search type list, select **RECORD**.
- <u>Step 4</u> In the calendar area, select a date.
- <u>Step 5</u> In the **CAM NAME** list, select a channel.
- Step 6 Click

The system starts playing recorded video.

#### 3.6 Configuring P2P Settings

You can add the DVR into your cell phone client or the platform to manage. For details, please refer to the P2P operation manual.

DI NOTE

Make sure the DVR is connected into the Internet, and if yes, in the **Status** box of the P2P interface, it shows **Online**.

#### 3.6.1 Entering P2P Interface

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > NETWORK > P2P.

The **P2P** interface is displayed. See Figure 3-10.

	5	
🚱 NETWORK		LIVE 💄 💽 🚆
TCP/IP	Enable	
CONNECTION	Lindote	To assist you in remotely managing your device, the P2P will be enabled.
Wi-Fi		After enabling P2P and connecting to Internet, we need to collect IP
		address, MAC address, device name, device SN, etc. All collected info is used only for the purpose of remote access.
PPPoE		If you don't agree to enable P2P function, please deselect the check box.
DDNS	Status	
EMAIL		
UPnP	Cell Phone Client	Device SN
SNMP		
MULTICAST	Scan the QR Q code on the A actual interface	s scalt the UK
REGISTER		
ALARM CENTER	Scan QR to Download	
P2P		
	Note: Scan the QR co	ode on the actual interface.
		Apply Back

#### Figure 3-10 P2P interface

Step 2 Enable the P2P function.

#### Step 3 Click Apply.

You can start adding the DVR into Cell Phone Client or the platform.

#### 3.6.2 Adding DVR into Cell Phone Client

To use P2P function, take adding device into Cell Phone Client as an example.

You can also enter the QR code interface by clicking 📰 on the top right of the interfaces

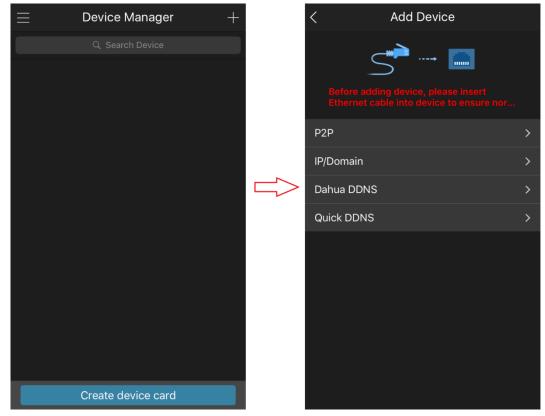
#### after you have entered the Main Menu.

- <u>Step 1</u> Use your cell phone to scan the QR code under **Cell Phone Client** to download the application.
- <u>Step 2</u> On your cell phone, open the application, and then tap **E**, the menu is displayed.

The Add Device interface is displayed. See Figure 3-11.

- If the DVR has not been initialized, follow the onscreen instructions to perform initialization first.
- You can add wireless device or wired device. The Guide takes adding wired device as an example.

Figure 3-11 Add device



<u>Step 4</u> Tap **P2P**, enter a name for the DVR, the username and password, scan the QR code under **Device SN**, and then tap **Start Live Preview**. The DVR is added and displayed on the live view interface of the cell phone. See Figure 3-12.

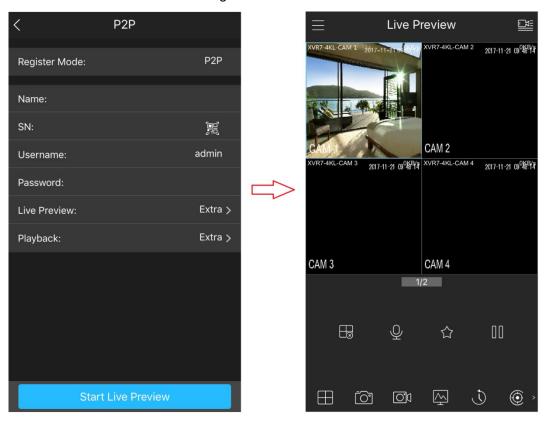


Figure 3-12 Live view

#### 3.7 Logout

On the top right of the Main Menu interface or any interface after you have entered the Main

Menu, click 🕒 -

- Select **Logout**, you will log out the DVR.
- Select **Reboot**, the DVR will be rebooted.
- Select **Shutdown**, the DVR will be turned off.

You can also press the power button on the DVR to turn it off.

# **4** Web Login

Open the browser, enter the IP address of the DVR, and then press **Enter**. The **Login in** dialog box is displayed. See Figure 4-1. Properly enter the user name and password to login the web. For details, see *User's Manual*.

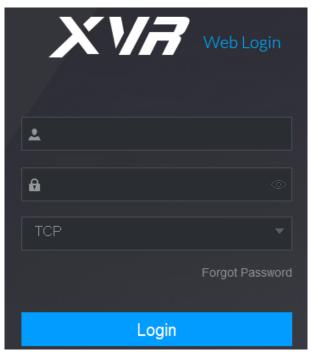


Figure 4-1 Login

#### 

- Device initialization is required at the first login.
- The default administrator account is **admin**. The password is the one that was configured during initializing settings. To security your account, it is recommended to keep the password properly and change it periodically.
- You can select the protocol type as **TCP**, **UDP**, or **MULTICAST** depending on the networking structure. The default is **TCP**.
- If you forgot the password, click Forgot Password to reset the password.
- When entering the **Live** interface for the first time, follow the onscreen instructions "Please install plugins first!" to install the plugins.

# Manual

# **Regulatory Information**

The regulatory information herein might vary according to the model you purchased. Some information is only applicable for the country or region where the product is sold.

#### FCC Information



Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

#### FCC conditions:

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- This device may not cause harmful interference.
- This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

#### FCC compliance:

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. This equipment generate, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the guide, may cause harmful interference to radio communication.

- For class A device, these limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a commercial environment. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.
- For class B device, these limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:
  - Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
  - Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
  - Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
  - Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

#### General

This user's manual (hereinafter referred to be "the Manual") introduces the functions and operations of the DVR devices (hereinafter referred to as "the Device").

#### Safety Instructions

The following categorized signal words with defined meaning might appear in the Manual.

Signal Words	Meaning
	Indicates a high potential hazard which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.
	Indicates a medium or low potential hazard which, if not avoided, could result in slight or moderate injury.
	Indicates a potential risk which, if not avoided, could result in property damage, data loss, lower performance, or unpredictable result.
O TIPS	Provides methods to help you solve a problem or save you time.
	Provides additional information as the emphasis and supplement to the text.

#### **Revision History**

No.	Version	Revision Content	Release Time
4	V1.0.6	Added some models.	May 2020
3	V1.0.5	Updated to 4.0 UI version.	February 2020
2	V1.0.4	Added disarm function, HDD database function, and SMD preview function. Optimizes Smart Search function, available to filtering human and vehicle.	September 2019
1	V1.0.0	First release.	October 2018

#### **Privacy Protection Notice**

As the device user or data controller, you might collect personal data of others such as face, fingerprints, car plate number, Email address, phone number, GPS and so on. You need to be

in compliance with the local privacy protection laws and regulations to protect the legitimate rights and interests of other people by implementing measures include but not limited to: providing clear and visible identification to inform data subject the existence of surveillance area and providing related contact.

#### About the Manual

- The manual is for reference only. If there is inconsistency between the manual and the actual product, the actual product shall prevail.
- We are not liable for any loss caused by the operations that do not comply with the manual.
- The manual would be updated according to the latest laws and regulations of related regions. For detailed information, see the paper manual, CD-ROM, QR code or our official website. If there is inconsistency between paper manual and the electronic version, the electronic version shall prevail.
- All the designs and software are subject to change without prior written notice. The product updates might cause some differences between the actual product and the manual. Please contact the customer service for the latest program and supplementary documentation.
- There still might be deviation in technical data, functions and operations description, or errors in print. If there is any doubt or dispute, please refer to our final explanation.
- Upgrade the reader software or try other mainstream reader software if the manual (in PDF format) cannot be opened.
- All trademarks, registered trademarks and the company names in the manual are the properties of their respective owners.
- Please visit our website, contact the supplier or customer service if there is any problem occurred when using the device.
- If there is any uncertainty or controversy, please refer to our final explanation.

# **Safeguards and Warnings**

This chapter describes the contents covering proper handling of the Device, hazard prevention, and prevention of property damage. Read these contents carefully before using the Device, comply with them when using, and keep it well for future reference.

#### **Operation Requirement**

- Do not place or install the Device in a place exposed to sunlight or near the heat source.
- Keep the Device away from dampness, dust or soot.
- Keep the Device installed horizontally on the stable place to prevent it from falling.
- Wall-mounting is not supported.
- Do not drop or splash liquid onto the Device, and make sure there is no object filled with liquid on the Device to prevent liquid from flowing into the Device.
- Install the Device in a well-ventilated place, and do not block the ventilation of the Device.
- Operate the device within the rated range of power input and output.
- Do not dissemble the Device.
- Transport, use and store the Device under the allowed humidity and temperature conditions.

#### **Electrical Safety**

- Use the battery of specified manufacturer; otherwise there might result in explosion. When replacing battery, make sure the same type is used. Improper battery use might result in fire, explosion, or inflammation.
- Follow the instructions to dispose of the used battery.
- Use the recommended power cables in the region and conform to the rated power specification.
- Use the power adapter provided with the Device, or adapter meets the LPS standard; otherwise, it might result in people injury and device damage.
- The power source shall conform to the requirement of the Safety Extra Low Voltage (SELV) standard, and supply power with rated voltage which conforms to Limited power Source requirement according to IEC60950-1. Please note that the power supply requirement is subject to the device label.
- Connect the device (I-type structure) to the power socket with protective earthing.
- The appliance coupler is a disconnection device. When using the coupler, keep the angle for easy operation.

# **Table of Contents**

Regulatory Information	I
Foreword	II
Safeguards and Warnings	IV
1 Introduction	1
1.1 Overview	1
1.2 Functions	1
2 Getting Started	3
2.1 Checking the Components	3

3.3 Remote Control Operations	19
3.4 Mouse Operations	21
4 Connecting Basics	23
4.1 Typical Connection Diagram	23
4.2 Connecting to Video and Audio Input and Output	24
4.2.1 Video Input	24
4.2.2 Video Output	24
4.2.3 Audio Input	24
4.2.4 Audio Output	25
4.3 Connecting to Alarm Input and Output	25
4.3.1 Introducing Alarm Port	26
4.3.2 Alarm Input	26
4.3.3 Alarm Output	27
4.3.4 Alarm Output Relay Parameters	27
5 Local Configurations	28
5.1 Initial Settings	28
5.1.1 Booting up	28
5.1.2 Initializing the Device	28
5.1.3 Resetting Password	32
5.1.4 Setting Up with the Startup Wizard	39
5.2 Live View	55
5.2.1 Live View Screen	55
5.2.2 Live View Control bar	56
5.2.3 Navigation Bar	60
5.2.4 Shortcut Menu	61
5.2.5 AI Preview Mode	62
5.2.6 Channel Sequence	64
5.2.7 Color Setting	66
5.2.8 Live View Display	68
5.2.9 Configuring Tour Settings	72
5.2.10 Quick Operation Bar	75
5.3 Entering Main Menu	77
5.4 Controlling PTZ Cameras	79
5.4.1 Configuring PTZ Connection Settings	79
5.4.2 Working with PTZ Control Panel	81
5.4.3 Configuring PTZ Functions	83
5.4.4 Calling PTZ Functions	85
5.4.5 Calling OSD Menu	87
5.5 Configuring Camera Settings	88
5.5.1 Configuring Image Settings	88
5.5.2 Configuring Encode Settings	91
5.5.3 Configuring Snapshot Settings	93
5.5.4 Configuring Encode Enhancement	94
5.5.5 Configuring Overlay Settings	95
5.5.6 Configuring Covered Area Settings	96
5.5.7 Configuring Channel Type	
5.5.8 Upgrading Coaxial Camera	98

5.6 Configuring Remote Devices	
5.6.1 Adding Remote Devices	
5.6.2 Managing Remote Devices	111
5.7 Configuring Record Settings	113
5.7.1 Enabling Record Control	114
5.7.2 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule	115
5.8 Configuring Snapshot Settings	115
5.8.1 Configuring Snapshot Trigger	115
5.8.2 Configuring Snapshot Storage Schedule	117
5.8.3 Backing up Snapshots to FTP	117
5.9 Playing Back Video	
5.9.1 Enabling Record Control	
5.9.2 Instant Playback	
5.9.3 Main Interface of Video Playback	
5.9.4 Smart Search	
5.9.5 Showing AI Rule during Playback	
5.9.6 Marking and Playing Back Video	
5.9.7 Playing Back Snapshots	
5.9.8 Playing Back Splices	
5.9.9 Using the File List	
5.10 Alarm Events Settings	
5.10.1 Alarm Information	
5.10.2 Alarm Input Settings	
5.10.3 Alarm Output Settings	
5.10.4 Video Detection	
5.10.5 System Events	
5.10.6 Configuring Disarming	
5.11 Al Function	
5.11.1 For Pro Al Series	
5.11.2 For Lite AI Series	
5.12 IoT Function	
5.12.1 Configuring Sensor Settings	
5.12.2 Configuring Temperature and Humidity Camera	
5.12.3 Configuring Wireless Siren	
5.13 Configuring POS Settings	
5.13.1 Searching the Transaction Records	
5.13.2 Configuring POS Settings	
5.14 Configuring Backup Settings	
5.14.1 Finding USB Device	
5.14.2 Backing up Files	
5.15 Network Management	
5.15.1 Configuring Network Settings	
5.15.2 Configuring Network Testing Settings	
5.16 Configuring Account Settings	
5.16.1 Configuring User Account.	
5.16.2 Configuring Group Account	
5.16.3 Configuring ONVIF Users	

5.17 Audio Management	
5.17.1 Configuring Audio Files	
5.17.2 Configuring Playing Schedule for Audio Files	
5.18 Storage Management	288
5.18.1 Configuring Basic Settings	288
5.18.2 Configuring the Recording and Snapshot Schedule	289
5.18.3 Configuring Disk Manager	289
5.18.4 Configuring Record	291
5.18.5 Configuring Advance Settings	291
5.18.6 Configuring Disk Quota	293
5.18.7 Configuring HDD Detecting Settings	294
5.18.8 Configuring Record Estimate	297
5.18.9 Configuring FTP Storage Settings	299
5.19 Security Center	
5.19.1 Security Status	
5.19.2 System Service	
5.19.3 Attack Defense	
5.19.4 CA Certificate	
5.19.5 Audio/Video Encryption	
5.19.6 Security Warning	
5.20 Configuring System Settings	
5.20.1 Configuring General System Settings	
5.20.2 Configuring RS-232 Settings	
5.20.3 Configuring System Maintenance Settings	
5.20.4 Exporting and Importing System Settings	
5.20.5 Restoring Default Settings	
5.20.6 Updating the Device	
5.21 Viewing Information	
5.21.1 Viewing Version Details	
5.21.2 Viewing Log Information 5.21.3 Viewing Event Information	
5.21.4 Viewing Network Information	
5.21.5 Viewing HDD Information	
5.21.6 Viewing Channel Information	
5.21.7 Viewing Data Stream Information	
5.22 Logout the Device	
6 Web Operations	
6.1 Connecting to Network	
6.2 Logging in the Web	
6.3 Introducing Web Main Menu	
7 FAQ	
Appendix 1 Glossary	
Appendix 2 HDD Capacity Calculation	
Appendix 3 Compatible Backup Devices	
Appendix 3.1 Compatible USB list	
Appendix 3.2 Compatible SD Card list	351
Appendix 3.3 Compatible Portable HDD list	

Appendix 3.4 Compatible USB DVD List	351
Appendix 3.5 Compatible SATA DVD List	351
Appendix 3.6 Compatible SATA HDD List	352
Appendix 4 Compatible CD/DVD Burner List	357
Appendix 5 Compatible Displayer List	358
Appendix 6 Compatible Switcher	359
Appendix 7 Earthing	360
Appendix 7.1 What Is the Surge	360
Appendix 7.2 The Earthing Modes	361
Appendix 7.3 Thunder Proof Ground Method in the Monitor System	362
Appendix 7.4 The Shortcut Way to Check the Electric System by Digital Multimeter	363
Appendix 8 RJ45-RS-232 Connection Cable Definition	366
Appendix 9 Cybersecurity Recommendations	368

#### 1.1 Overview

The Device is an excellent digital monitor product for security industry. The embedded LINUX OS assures the stable operation. The H.265 and G.711 technologies assure the high quality image and low bit stream. The frame-by-frame play function displays more details for analysis, and provides the functions such as record, playback, and monitor and assures the synchronization for audio and video. The Device also adopts the advanced control technology and great network data transmission capability.

The Device adopts embedded design to achieve high security and reliability. It can work in the local end and, with strong networking capability it can get connected to the professional surveillance software (Smart PSS) to form a security network to show its powerful remote monitoring function.

The Device is applicable to the areas such as bank, telecom, electricity, traffic, intelligent residential district, factory, warehouse, resources, and water conservancy facilities.

### **1.2 Functions**

#### 

The functions might be different depending on the software and hardware versions of the model you purchased.

#### **AI Function**

- Support face detection that analyzes the attributes such as age, gender, glasses, beard, mask, and then make structured of these data to store for quick search.
- Support face recognition that compares the captured face snapshot with the face library and link the configured alarms (face detection should be enabled).
- Support searching by picture that is convenient for finding the target picture from database.
- Support 16 channel IVS function that includes tripwire and intrusion detection. The IVS function can avoid wrong alarms by filtering the factors such as rains, light, and animals.
- Calculate the quantity of detected humans within 24 hours.
- Detect the vehicles passing by within 24 hours.

#### **Real-time Surveillance**

- Support VGA port and HDMI port to realize the surveillance through monitors.
- Support HDMI, VGA, and TV output at the same time.

#### **IoT Management**

Provide specific management module for IoT features including humidity and temperature data reports and alarms linkage.

#### **Sensor Integration**

Integrate coaxial cameras with diverse array of sensors such as temperature, humidity and wireless alarm devices.

#### Storage Management

- Special data format to guarantee data security and avoid the risk of modifying data viciously.
- Support digital watermark.

#### **Compression Format**

Support multiple-channel audio and video signal. An independent hardware decodes the audio and video signal from each channel to maintain video and audio synchronization.

#### **Backup Function**

- Support backup operation through USB port (such as USB storage disk, portable HDD, and burner).
- Client-end user can download the file from local HDD through network to backup.

#### **Record & Playback**

- Support each channel real-time record independently, and simultaneously support the functions such as search, backward play, network monitor, record search, and download.
- Support various playback modes: slow play, fast play, backward play and frame by frame play.
- Support time title overlay so that you can view event accurate occurred time.
- Support zooming in the selected area in the live view.

#### **Network Operation**

Support network remote real-time monitor, remote record search and remote PTZ control.

#### Alarm Activation

- Several relay alarm outputs to realize alarm activation and on-site light control.
- The alarm input port and output port have the protection circuit to guarantee the Device safety.

#### **Communication Port**

- RS-485 port can realize alarm input and PTZ control.
- RS-232 port can connect to keyboard, COM port of PC or the matrix control.
- Standard Ethernet port can realize network remote access function.
- The dual-network port has the multi-address, fault tolerance, load balance setup mode.

#### PTZ Control

Support PTZ decoder through RS-485 port.

#### **Intelligent Operation**

- Support mouse operation function.
- Support "copy and paste" function for the same settings.

#### **UPnP (Universal Plug and Play)**

Establish mapping connection between LAN and WAN through UPnP protocol.

#### **Camera Self-adaptive**

Auto-recognize and work with the PAL or NTSC camera and HD camera.

# 2 Getting Started

### 2.1 Checking the Components

#### 

The actual appearance, component, or quantity might be different depending on the model you purchased.

When you receive the Device, please check against the following checking list. If any of the items are missing or damaged, contact the local retailer or after-sales engineer immediately.

No.	Checking Items		Requirement	
	Package	Appearance	No obvious damage.	
1		Packing materials	No broken or distorted positions that could be caused by hit.	
2	Labels	Labels on the device	Not torn up. Do not tear up or throw away the labels; otherwise the warranty services are not ensured. You need to provide the serial number of the product when you call the after-sales service.	
	Device	Appearance	No obvious damage.	
3		Data cables, power cables, fan cables, mainboard	No connection loose.	

### **3.3 Remote Control Operations**

Please note the remote control is not our standard accessory and might not be included in the accessary bag. It is supplied dependent on the model you purchased.

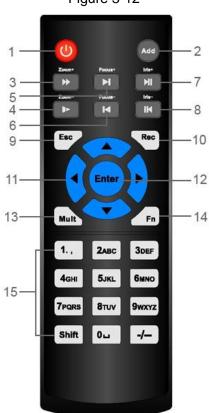


Figure 3-12

Table 3-12

No.	Name	Function	
1	Power button	Press this button to boot up or shut down the device.	
2	Address	Press this button to input device serial number, so that you can	
	Address	control the Device.	
3	Forward	Multi-step forward speed and normal speed playback.	
4	Slow motion	Multi-step slow motion speed or normal playback.	
5	Next record	In playback state, press this button to play back the next video.	
6	Previous record	In playback state, press this button to play back the previous	
	Previous record	video.	
	Play/Pause	• In normal playback state, press this button to pause playback.	
		In pause state, press this button to resume to normal	
7		playback.	
		• In live view window interface, press this button to enter video	
		search menu.	
		In the reverse playback state, press this button to pause reverse	
8	Deverse/neuro	playback.	
0	Reverse/pause	In the reverse playback pause state, press this button to resume to	
		playback reversing state.	
0	Faa	Go back to previous menu or cancel current operation (close front	
9	Esc.	interface or control).	

No.	Name	Function					
10	Record	<ul> <li>Start or stop record manually.</li> <li>In record interface, use the direction buttons to select the channel that you want to record.</li> <li>Press this button for at least 1.5 seconds, and the manual</li> </ul>					
11	Direction keys	record interface will be displayed. Switch between current activated controls by going left or right. In playback state, the keys control the playback progress bar. Aux function (such as operating the PTZ menu).					
12	Enter/menu key	<ul> <li>Confirms an operation.</li> <li>Go to the OK button.</li> <li>Go to the menu.</li> </ul>					
13	Multiple-window switch	Switch between multiple-window and one-window.					
14	Fn	<ul> <li>In single-channel monitoring mode, press this button to display the PTZ control and color setting functions.</li> <li>Switch the PTZ control menu in PTZ control interface.</li> <li>In motion detection interface, press this button with direction keys to complete setup.</li> <li>In text mode, press and hold this button to delete the last character. To use the clearing function: Long press this button for 1.5 seconds.</li> <li>In HDD menu, switch HDD recording time and other information as indicated in the pop-up message.</li> </ul>					
15	Alphanumeric keys	<ul> <li>Input password, numbers.</li> <li>Switch channel.</li> <li>Press Shift to switch the input method.</li> </ul>					

# 3.4 Mouse Operations

The operations are based on the considerations for right-handed users.

Table 3-13

Operation	Function					
	Password input dialogue box pops up if you have not logged in yet.					
	In live view window interface, you can go to the main menu.					
	When you have selected one menu item, click it to view menu content.					
	Implement the control operation.					
Click left mouse	Modify check box or motion detection status.					
button	Click combo box to pop up drop-down list.					
	In text box, click the corresponding button on the panel to enter a numeral					
	or English character (small/capitalized).					
	In English input mode: Click      to enter a backspace and click					

Operation	Function					
	to delete the previous character.					
	!?@#\$%=+*← 123 qwertyuiop/ 456 asdfghjkl:Enter 789 zxcvbnm,.Shift 0&					
	<ul> <li>In numeral input mode: Click I to clear and click I to delete the</li> </ul>					
	previous character.					
	123 456 789 0 ↓ ←					
	Implement special control operations such as double-click one item in the					
Double-click left	file list to play back the video.					
mouse button	In multiple-window mode, double-click one channel to view in full-window. Double-click current video again to go back to previous multiple-window mode.					
	Right-click in live view window interface, the shortcut menu is displayed. For					
Right-click	different series product, the shortcut menu may vary.					
	Exit current menu without saving the modification.					
	In numeral input box: Increase or decrease numeral value.					
Click scroll wheel button	Switch the items in the combo box.					
	Page up or page down.					
Point to select and move	Select current control and move it.					
Dragging a selection box	Select motion detection zone.					
with left mouse button	Select privacy mask zone.					

**4** Connecting Basics

This chapter introduces the typical connection diagrams and ports connections.

# 4.1 Typical Connection Diagram

#### $\square$ The following figure is for reference only. The actual product shall prevail. Figure 4-1 🦺 🌔 💷 0 1 🤝 🗘 🕋 J.... J RS-485 PTZ Video Input Audio Input nput 6 0 $\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$ 0 0 0 0 <sup>\*</sup>0`0`0`0`0`0`0`0 0 ŧ VGA Outnu HDMI Output USB Port rm Output Power Gro Inpu 2 ..... A Swite Network Lise

# 4.2 Connecting to Video and Audio Input and Output

## 4.2.1 Video Input

The video input interface is BNC. The input video format includes: PAL/NTSC BNC ( $1.0V_{P-P}$ ,  $75\Omega$ ).

The video signal should comply with your national standards.

The input video signal shall have high SNR, low distortion; low interference, natural color, and suitable lightness.

#### Guarantee the stability and reliability of the camera signal

The camera shall be installed in a cool, dry place away from the conditions such as direct sunlight, inflammable, and explosive substances.

The camera and the DVR should have the same grounding to ensure the normal operation of the camera.

#### Guarantee stability and reliability of the transmission line

Please use high quality, sound shielded BNC. Please select suitable BNC model according to the transmission distance.

If the distance is too long, you should use twisted pair cable, and you can add video compensation devices or use optical fiber to ensure video quality.

You should keep the video signal away from the strong electromagnetic interference, especially the high tension current.

#### Keep connection lugs in well contact

The signal line and shielded wire should be fixed firmly and in well connection. Avoid dry joint, lap welding, and oxidation.

## 4.2.2 Video Output

Video output includes a BNC (PAL/NTSC1.0V<sub>P-P</sub>, 75 $\Omega$ ) output, a VGA output, and HDMI output. System supports BNC, VGA and HDMI output at the same time.

When you are using pc-type monitor to replace the monitor, please pay attention to the following points:

- To defer aging, do not allow the pc monitor to run for a long time.
- Regular demagnetization will keep device maintain proper status.
- Keep it away from strong electromagnetic interference devices.

Using TV as video output device is not a reliable substitution method. You also need to reduce the working hour and control the interference from power supply and other devices. The low quality TV may result in device damage.

## 4.2.3 Audio Input

This series of products audio input port adopt BNC port.

Due to high impedance of audio input, please use active sound pick-up.

Audio transmission is similar to video transmission. Try to avoid interference, dry joint, loose contact and it shall be away from high tension current.

# 4.2.4 Audio Output

The audio output signal parameter is usually over 200mv 1K $\Omega$  (BNC or RCA). It can directly connect to low impedance earphone, active sound box or amplifier-drive audio output device.

If the sound box and the pick-up cannot be separated spatially, it is easy to arouse squeaking. In this case you can adopt the following measures:

- Use better sound pick-up with better directing property.
- Reduce the volume of the sound box.
- Using more sound-absorbing materials in decoration can reduce voice echo and improve acoustics environment.
- Adjust the layout of speaker and pickup to reduce squeaking.

# 4.3 Connecting to Alarm Input and Output

Please read the followings before connecting.

#### Alarm input

- Make sure alarm input mode is grounding alarm input.
- Grounding signal is needed for alarm input.
- Alarm input needs the low level voltage signal.
- Alarm input mode can be either NC (Normally Closed) or NO (Normally Open).
- When you are connecting two DVRs or you are connecting one DVR and one other device, use a relay to separate them.

#### Alarm output

The alarm output port should not be connected to high power load directly (It shall be less than 1A) to avoid high current which might result in relay damage. Use the contactor to realize the connection between the alarm output port and the load.

#### How to connect PTZ decoder

- Ensure the decoder has the same grounding with DVR; otherwise the PTZ might not be controlled. Shielded twisted wire is recommended and the shielded layer is used to connect to the grounding.
- Avoid high voltage. Ensure proper wiring and some thunder protection measures.
- For too long signal wires, 120Ω should be parallel connected between A, B lines on the far end to reduce reflection and guarantee the signal quality.
- "485 A, B" of DVR cannot parallel connect with "485 port" of other device.
- The voltage between of A, B lines of the decoder should be less than 5V.

#### Make sure the front-end device has soundly earthed

Improper grounding might result in chip damage.

# 4.3.1 Introducing Alarm Port

#### The alarm input ports are dependent on the model you purchased.

	Figure 4-2																		
								;	<u> </u>										
1	2	3	4	÷	5	6	7	8	÷	9	10	11	12	÷	13	14	15	16	÷
52	52	52	57	52	52	52	52	52	52	1/5 0	52	57	52	5	5	25.0	25.0	25.0	22
0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0		llo	0	0	0	0	o	0	lo	0	0
									لصار					6					رلصاد
					N	110	1 N	720	2 NI	03.01	2 1	^	B	1					

NO1 C1	NO2	C2	NO3	S C 3	÷	Α	в	÷
	57	57	57	57	57	57	57	57
Inte	പ്	الم)	[_]	പ്പി	1	6	6	6
			0	0	0	0	0	
								ر ل ا

Table 4-1

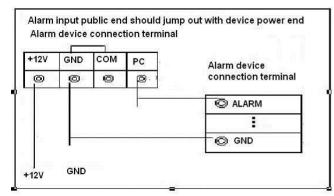
Icon	Description				
1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8,					
9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14,	ALARM 1 to ALARM 16. The alarm becomes active in low voltage.				
15, 16					
NO1 C1, NO2 C2,	There are four groups of permally open activation output (op/off button)				
NO3 C3	There are four groups of normally open activation output (on/off button).				
÷	Ground cable.				
	485 communication port. They are used to control devices such as				
485 A/B	decoder. 120 $\Omega$ should be parallel connected between A, B lines if there				
	are too many PTZ decoders.				

# 4.3.2 Alarm Input

Refer to the following figure for more information.

- Grounding alarm inputs which includes NO (Normally Open) and NC (Normally Closed) type.
- Parallel connect COM end and GND end of the alarm detector (Provide external power to the alarm detector).
- Parallel connect the Ground of the DVR and the ground of the alarm detector.
- Connect the NC port of the alarm sensor to the DVR alarm input (ALARM).
- Use the same ground with that of DVR if you use external power to the alarm device.

Figure 4-3



# 4.3.3 Alarm Output

- Provide external power to external alarm device.
- To avoid overloading, read the following relay parameters table carefully.
- RS-485 A/B cable is for the A/B cable of the PTZ decoder.

# 4.3.4 Alarm Output Relay Parameters

Refer to the actual product for relay model information.

Та	ble	4-2

Model		HFD23/005-1ZS	HRB1-S-DC5V		
Material of th	e touch	AgNi+ gold-plating	AuAg10/AgNi10/CuNi30		
	Rated switch capacity	30V DC 1A/125V AC 0.5A	24V DC 1A/125V AC 2A		
Rating (Resistance	Maximum switch power	62.5VA/30W	250VA/48W		
Load)	Maximum switch voltage	125V AC/60V DC	125V AC/60V DC		
	Maximum switch currency	2A	2A		
	Between touches	400VAC 1 minute	500VAC 1 minute		
Insulation	Between touch and winding	1000VAC 1 minute	1000VAC 1 minute		
Turn-on Time	9	5ms maximum	5ms maximum		
Turn-off Time	e	5ms maximum	5ms maximum		
l an na ŝta	Mechanical	1×10 <sup>7</sup> times (300 times/MIN)	5×10 <sup>6</sup> times (300 times/MIN)		
Longevity	Electrical	1×10 <sup>5</sup> times (30 times/MIN)	2.5×10 <sup>4</sup> times (30 times/MIN)		
Working Terr	perature	-30℃—+70℃	-40°C−+70°C		

# **5** Local Configurations

Read the following notes prior to using the Device.

 $\square$ 

- The interfaces in the Manual are used for introducing the operations and only for reference.
   The actual interface might be different dependent on the model you purchased. If there is inconsistency between the Manual and the actual product, the actual product shall govern.
- The Manual is a general document for introducing the product, so there might be some functions described for the Device in the Manual not apply to the model you purchased.
- Conventions for mouse operations on a menu.
  - $\diamond$  Click: On the menu, left-click the mouse once on an option to enter the option setting.
  - Right-click: On any interface, right-click the mouse once to return to the previous level.
     For details about mouse operations, see "3.4 Mouse Operations."

# **5.1 Initial Settings**

# 5.1.1 Booting up



- Ensure the input voltage corresponds to the power requirement of the Device. Power on the Device after the power cable is properly connected.
- To protect the Device, connect the Device with the power cable first, and then connect to the power source.
- To ensure the stable work of the Device and the external devices connected to the Device and to prolong the HDD life, it is recommended to refer to the national related standard to use the power source that provides stable voltage with less interference from ripples. UPS power source is recommended.
- <u>Step 1</u> Connect the Device to the monitor.
- <u>Step 2</u> Plug in the power cable to the Device.
- <u>Step 3</u> Press the power button to turn on the Device. The power indicator light is on. On the connected monitor, the live view screen is displayed by default. If you turn on the Device during the time period that is configured for recording, the system starts recording after it is turned on, and you will see the icon indicating recording status is working in the specific channels.

# 5.1.2 Initializing the Device

When booting up for the first time, you need to configure the password information for **admin** (by default).

 $\square$ 

To secure the Device, it is strongly recommended for you to properly keep the password for admin and modify it regularly.

Step 1 Turn on the Device.

The Location, Language and Video Standard interface is displayed. See Figure 5-1.

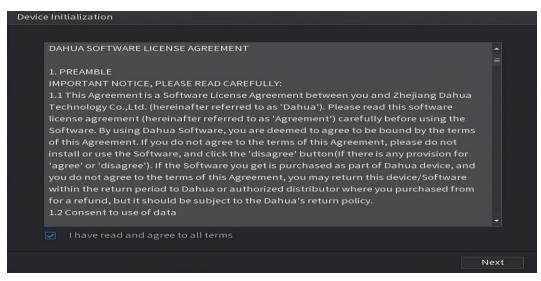
Figure 5-1

Device Initialization			ڻ ٺ
Location	Please select an item.		
Language	English		
Video Standard	PAL		

- <u>Step 2</u> Select your location from the drop-down list, then language and video standard will match your location automatically. You can change the language and video standard manually.
- Step 3 Click Next.

The Dahua Software License Agreement interface is displayed. See Figure 5-2.

Figure 5-2



<u>Step 4</u> Tick the check box that **I have read and agree to all terms**, and then click **Next**. The **System Zone** and **System Time** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-3.

Figure 5-3

Device Initialization				
Time 2	Zone	(UTC+04:00) Y	/erevan	
Syster	n Time	2020 - 01 - 08	13:11:35	
				Next
				Next

<u>Step 5</u> Select system zone, configure system time, and then click **Next**. The **Enter Password** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-4

Device Initialization				
1. Password Setting	; →	2. Unlock Pat	tern 🔶	3. Password Protection
Username Password Confirm Password Password Hint	admin		including categories letters, lo character	I must be 8 to 32 characters, at least two of the following s: numbers, uppercase wercase letters and special 's (Characters like ' " ; : & e included in ).
				Next

<u>Step 6</u> Configure the password information for admin. For details, see Table 5-1.

Table 5-1

Parameter	Description		
User	By default, the user is <b>admin</b> .		
Password	In the <b>Password</b> box, enter the password for admin.		
	The new password can be set from 8 characters through 32		
Confirm Password	characters and contains at least two types from number, letter and		
	special characters (excluding"'", """, ";", ":" and "&").		

Parameter	Description
Prompt Hint	In the Prompt Hint box, enter the information that can remind you
	of the password.
	On the login interface, click <b>F</b> , the prompt will display to help you find back the password.

Step 7 Click Next.

The Unlock Pattern interface is displayed.

Figure 5-5

Device Initialization							
1. Password Setting			Unlock Pattern		<b>→</b>	3. Passwore	d Protection
	Dr	raw	the unlock patte	ern.			
						Previous	Skip

Step 8 Draw an unlock pattern.

After the setting is completed, the **Password Protection** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-6.

 $\square$ 

- The pattern that you want to set must cross at least four points.
- If you do not want to configure the unlock pattern, click Skip.
- Once you have configured the unlock pattern, the system will require the unlock pattern as the default login method. If you skip this setting, enter the password for login.

Device Initialization					
		2. Unlock Pattern			l Protection
Reserved Email Security Question			r password re proved in time	set. Recommer 2.	nded or
Question 1	What is your fav	orite children's bool	</td <td></td> <td></td>		
Answer					
Question 2	What was the fir	rst name of your firs <sup>.</sup>	t boss?		
Answer					
Question 3	What is the nam	e of your favorite fru	uit?		
Answer					
					ок

Figure 5-6

<u>Step 9</u> Configure the protection parameters for password. For details, see Table 5-2. After configuration, if you forget the password for admin user, you can reset the password through the reserved email address or security questions. For details about resetting the password, see 5.1.3

If you do not want to configure the settings, disable the email address and security questions functions on the interface.

Table 5-2

Password	Description		
Protection Mode			
	Enter the reserved email address.		
Reserved Email	In the Reserved Email box, enter an email address for password		
Reserved Email	reset. If you forget the password, enter the security code that you will		
	get from this reserved email address to reset the password of admin.		
	Configure the security questions and answers.		
Security	If you forget the password, enter the answers to the questions can		
Questions	make you reset the password.		
If you want to conf	igure the email or security questions fucntion later or you want to		

change the configurations, select **Main Menu > ACCOUNT > Password Reset**.

<u>Step 10</u> Click **OK** to complete the settings.

The End-User License Agreement interface is displayed.

Step 11 Select I have read and agree to all terms check box.

Step 12 Click Next.

The **Startup Wizard** interface is displayed. For details about quick settings during startup, see 5.1.4.

# 5.1.3 Resetting Password

You can reset the password by the following methods when you forget the password for admin account.

- If the password reset function is enabled, you can use mobile phone to scan the QR code to reset the password. For details, see "5.1.3.2 Resetting Password on Local Interface."
- If the password reset function is disabled, there are two situations:
  - If you configured security questions, you can find back the password by the security questions.
  - If you did not configure the security questions, you can only use the reset button on the mainboard to restore the Device to factory default. For details, see "5.1.3.3 Using Reset Button on the Mainboard."

Not all models are provided with reset button.

## 5.1.3.1 Enabling Password Reset Function

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > Account > Password Reset.

The **Password Reset** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-7

🔔 🚜 ACCOUNT	🖿 🍪 📥 🎭 🛡 🤽	
User Group ONVIF User	Password Reset Enable Reserved Email w***@msn.com	
<ul> <li>Password Reset</li> </ul>		
	Security Question Set successfully. Please reset first if you need to modify security questions. Reset	
	Question 1     What is your favorite children's book?       Answer	
	Question 2     What was the first name of your first boss?       Answer	
	Question 3     What is the name of your favorite fruit?       Answer	
	Apply Back	

<u>Step 2</u> Enable the Password Reset function.

 $\square$ 

This function is enabled by default.

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to save the settings.

When Password reset function is disabled, you can retrieve password through following ways:

- You can retrieve password through resetting password on local interface or using Reset button on the mainboard when the device supports Reset button.
- You can only retrieve password through resetting password on local interface (make sure that security questions are preset) when the device does not support Reset button.

## 5.1.3.2 Resetting Password on Local Interface

<u>Step 1</u> Enter the login interface.

- If you have configured unlock pattern, the unlock pattern login interface is displayed. See Figure 5-8. Click **Forgot Pattern**, the password login interface is displayed. See Figure 5-9.
- If you did not configure unlock pattern, the password login interface is displayed.

See Figure 5-9. Click is to display the password with plaintext.

 $\square$ 

To login from other user account, on the unlock pattern login interface, click **Switch User**; or on the password login interface, in the **User Name** list, select other users to login.

Login		
	admin	
Forgot P	attern Swit	cch User

Figure 5-8

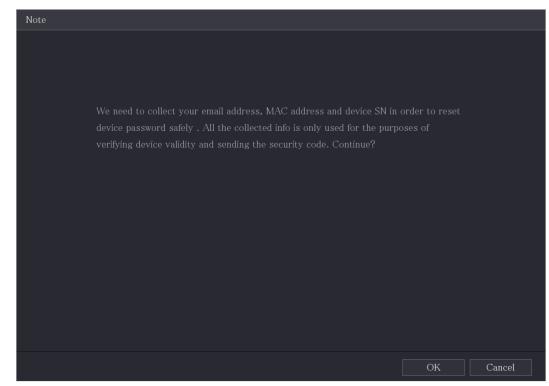


Login				
Username	admin			E2
Password			0	2
		<b>_</b>		
	OK	Cancel		

Step 2 Click

- If you have set the reserved email address, the **Prompt** message interface is displayed.
- If you did not set the reserved email address, the email entering interface is displayed. See Step 3. Enter the email address, and then click **Next**, the **Prompt** message interface is displayed.

#### Figure 5-10



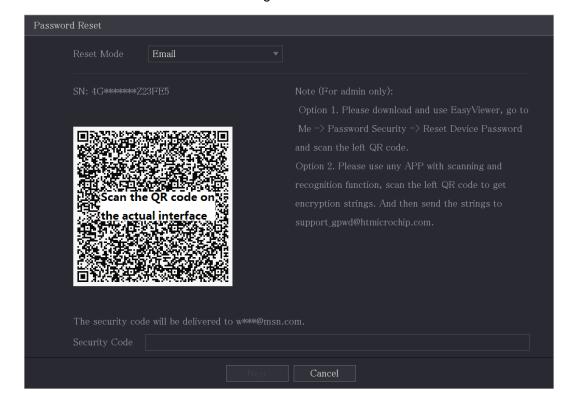
Step 3 Click OK.

The Password Reset interface is displayed.

 $\square$ 

After clicking **OK**, the system will collect your information for password reset, and the information includes but not limited to email address, MAC address, and device serial number. Read the prompt carefully before clicking **OK**.

Fig	uro	5-1	1
I IQ	ule	J-1	



Step 4 Reset the password.

QR code

Follow the onscreen instructions to get the security code in your reserved email address. In the **Security code** box, enter the security code.



- You can get the security code twice by scanning the same QR code. If you need to get the security code once again, refresh the interface.
- Use the security code received in your email box to reset the password within 24 hours; otherwise the security code becomes invalid.
- Security questions
- On the Reset password interface as shown in Step 3, in the Reset Type list, select Security Questions, the Security Questions interface is displayed.

If you did not configure the security questions before, in the **Reset Type** list, there will be no **Security Questions**.

2) In the **Answer** box, enter the correct answers.



Password Reset	
Reset Mode	Security Question
Question 1 Answer	
Question 2 Answer	
Question 3 Answer	
	Next Cancel



The new password resetting interface is displayed.

#### Figure 5-13

Password Reset	Password Reset		
Denot the recovered			
Reset the password	or (admin)		
New Password			
	Password must be 8 to 32 characters, including at least two of the following		
	categories: numbers, uppercase letters, lowercase letters and special		
	characters(Characters like'";:& cannot be included in ).		
Confirm Password			
	OK Cancel		

<u>Step 6</u> In the **New Password** box, enter the new password and enter it again in the **Confirm Password** box.

<u>Step 7</u> Click **Save**. The password resetting is started.

After resetting is completed, a pop-up message is displayed.

Step 8 Click OK.

A pop-up message is displayed asking if you want to sync the password with the remote devices, see Figure 5-14.

- Click **Cancel**, the resetting is finished.
- Click **OK**, the Sync Info interface is displayed.

Figure 5-14

Password Reset		
Reset the pas	sword of (admin)	
New Passwor	d •••••••	
	Note	st two of the
Confirm Pass	Do you want to sync Password to remote device accessed by private protocol?	vercase cannot
Comminipass		
	OK Cancel	
	OK Cancel	

 $\square$ 

This message appears only when there are digital channels instead of only analog channels.





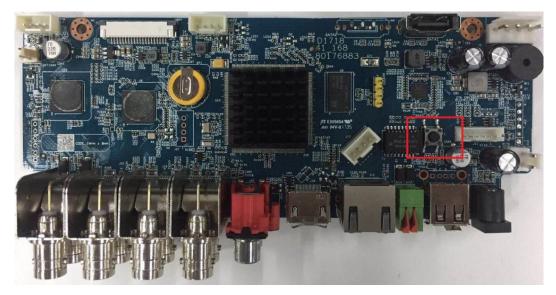
## 5.1.3.3 Using Reset Button on the Mainboard

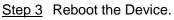
You can always use the reset button on the mainboard to reset the Device to the factory default.

Not all models are provided with reset button.

- <u>Step 1</u> Disconnect the Device from power source, and then remove the cover panel. For details about removing the cover panel, see "2.2 Installing HDD."
- <u>Step 2</u> Find the reset button on the mainboard, and then press and hold the reset button for 5 seconds to 10 seconds. See Figure 5-16 for the location of the reset button.

Figure 5-16





After the Device is rebooted, the settings have been restored to the factory default. You can start resetting the password.

# 5.1.4 Setting Up with the Startup Wizard

## 5.1.4.1 Entering Startup Wizard

The Startup Wizard helps you configure the basic settings to set up the Device.

After you have initialized the Device, the Startup Wizard interface is displayed.

Figure 5-17

Startu	p Wizard
	come to use startup wizard. The wizard will help you to set important parameters. Click Next to tinue.
	Auto Check for Updates
	Notify me when updates are available. The system checks for updates daily. To inform you of the latest firmware updates for your device, we need to collect device info such as IP address, device name, language preference, firmware version, device SN, etc. All collected info is used only for the purposes of verifying device validity and pushing update notifications. You can withdraw your consent at any time by opening MAINTAIN->Manager- >Update on device interface.
	Next

- If you select the **Auto-check for updates** check box, the system will notify you automatically when updates are available.
- After the auto-check function is enabled, to notify you to update timely, the system will collect the information such as IP address, device name, firmware version, and device serial number. The collected information is only used to verify the legality of the Device and push upgrade notices.
- If you clear the Auto-check for updates check box, the system will not perform automatic checks.

## 5.1.4.2 Configuring General Settings

You can configure the general settings for the Device such as Device name, language, and settings for instant playback.

You can also configure general settings by selecting **Main Menu > SYSTEM > General > Basic**.

#### <u>Step 1</u> On the Startup Wizard interface, click Next.

The **Basic** interface is displayed.

Basic			
Device Name	XVR		
Device No.	8		
Al Mode	SMD 🔻		
Language	English 🔻		
Video Standard	PAL 🔻		
Instant Playback	5	min.	
Logout Time	10	min. N	on-login User Permission
Navigation Bar			
Mouse Sensitivity	•	+	
	Slow	Fast	
			Previous Next

Figure 5-18

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the basic settings parameters.

Tabl		E O
Tab	e	5-5

Parameter	Description
Device Name	In the <b>Device Name</b> box, enter the Device name.
Device No.	In the <b>Device No.</b> box, enter a number for the Device.
Al Mode	<ul> <li>Select SMD, Face or IVS&amp;SMD for AI function in 5.11.2 For Lite AI Series.</li> <li>When SMD is selected, only SMD is available.</li> <li>When Face is selected, only face detection and face recognition are available.</li> <li>When IVS&amp;SMD is selected, only IVS and SMD are available.</li> <li>This parameter is supported on select models. SMD, face detection, face recognition and IVS cannot be enabled simultaneously on those models.</li> </ul>
Language	In the Language list, select a language for the Device system.
Video Standard	In the Video Standard list, select PAL or NTSC according to your actual situation.
Instant Playback	In the <b>Instant Playback</b> box, enter the time length for playing back the recoded video. The value ranges from 5 to 60. On the live view control bar, click the instant playback button to play back the recorded video within the configured time.
Logout Time	In the <b>Logout Time</b> box, enter the standby time for the Device. The Device automatically logs out when it is not working for the configured time period. You need to login the Device again.

Parameter	Description
	The value ranges from 0 to 60. 0 indicates there is not standby time for
	the Device.
	Click Monitor Channel(s) when logout. You can select the channels
	that you want to continue monitoring when you logged out.
Novigation Par	Enable the navigation bar. When you click on the live view screen, the
Navigation Bar	navigation bar is displayed.
Mouse Pointer	Adjust the speed of double-click by moving the slider.
Speed	The bigger the value is, the faster the double-clicking speed must be.

## 5.1.4.3 Configuring Date and Time Settings

The **Date &Time** interface is displayed.

You can configure the system time, choose the time zone, set the daylight saving time, and enable the NTP server.

You can also configure date and time settings by selecting **Main Menu > SYSTEM > General > Date &Time**.

<u>Step 1</u> After you have configured the general settings, on the **General** interface, click **Next**.

Date&Time		
System Time	2020 - 01 - 08 17 : 12 : 52	
Time Zone	(UTC+08:00) Beijing, Chongqing, H	long Kong, 🔻 Save
Date Format	YYYY MM DD 🗸	
Date Separator		
Time Format	24-Hour 👻	
DST	Date 🔿 Week	
Start Time	Jan 👻 1 👻 00:00	
End Time	Jan 🔻 2 👻 00:00	
NTP		
Server Address	time.windows.com	Manual Update
Port	123	
Interval	60	min.
		Previous Next

Figure 5-19

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for date and time parameters.

Table 5-4

Parameter	Description
	In the System Time box, enter time for the system.
	Click the time zone list, you can select a time zone for the system, and
	the time in adjust automatically.
System Time	$\triangle$
	Do not change the system time randomly; otherwise the recorded
	video cannot be searched. It is recommended to avoid the recoding
	period or stop recording first before you change the system time.
Time Zone	In the <b>Time Zone</b> list, select a time zone for the system.

Parameter	Description
Date Format	In the Date Format list, select a date format for the system.
Date Separator	In the Date Separator list, select a separator style for the date.
Time Format	In the <b>Time Format</b> list, select <b>12-HOUR</b> or <b>24-HOUR</b> for the time display style.
DST	Enable the Daylight Saving Time function. Click Week or click Date.
Start Time	Configure the start time and and time for the DCT
End Time	Configure the start time and end time for the DST.
NTP	Enable the NTP function to sync the Device time with the NTP server.
	If NTP is enabled, device time will be automatically synchronized with server.
Serve Address	In the <b>Server Address</b> box, enter the IP address or domain name of the corresponding NTP server. Click <b>Manual Update</b> , the Device starts syncing with the server immediately.
Port	The system supports TCP protocol only and the default setting is 123.
Interval	In the <b>Interval</b> box, enter the amount of time that you want the Device to sync time with the NTP server. The value ranges from 0 to 65535.

## 5.1.4.4 Configuring Network Settings

You can configure the basic network settings such as net mode, IP version, and IP address of the Device.

You can also configure network settings by selecting **Main Menu > NETWORK > TCP/IP**.

<u>Step 1</u> After you have configured the date and time settings, on the **Date &Time** interface, click **Next**.

The **NETWORK** interface is displayed.

TCP/IP					
NIC Name IP	Address Netwo Single	rk NIC Member NIC 1	Modify	Unbind	
IP Address MAC Address:		efault Gateway: ubnet Mask:		MTU: 1500 Mode: Static	
IP Version Preferred DNS Alternate DNS Default Card	IPv4 NIC1				
Test				Previous	Next

Figure 5-20

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for network parameters.

Table 5-5
1 4010 0 0

Parameter	Description
IP Version	In the IP Version list, you can select IPv4 or IPv6. Both versions are
	supported for access.
MAC Address	Displays the MAC address of the Device.
DHCP	<ul> <li>Enable the DHCP function. The IP address, subnet mask and default gateway are not available for configuration once DHCP is enabled.</li> <li>If DHCP is effective, the obtained information will display in the IP Address box, Subnet Mask box and Default Gateway box. If not, all values show 0.0.0.0.</li> <li>If you want manually configure the IP information, disable the DHCP function first.</li> <li>If PPPoE connection is successful, the IP address, subnet mask, default gateway, and DHCP are not available for configuration.</li> </ul>
IP Address	Enter the IP address and configure the corresponding subnet mask and
Subnet Mask	default gateway.
Default Gateway	IP address and default gateway must be in the same network segment.
DNS DHCP	Enable the DHCP function to get the DNS address from router.
Preferred DNS	In the <b>Preferred DNS</b> box, enter the IP address of DNS.
Alternate DNS	In the Alternate DNS box, enter the IP address of alternate DNS.
MTU	<ul> <li>In the MTU box, enter a value for network card. The value ranges from 1280 byte through 1500 byte. The default is 1500.</li> <li>The suggested MTU values are as below.</li> <li>1500: The biggest value of Ethernet information package. This value is typically selected if there is no PPPoE or VPN connection, and it is also the default value of some routers, network adapters and switches.</li> <li>1492: Optimized value for PPPoE.</li> <li>1468: Optimized value for DHCP.</li> <li>1450: Optimized value for VPN.</li> </ul>
Test	Click <b>Test</b> to test if the entered IP address and gateway are interworking.

## 5.1.4.5 Configuring P2P Settings

You can add the Device into your cell phone client or the platform to manage.

You can also configure P2P function by selecting **Main Menu > Network > P2P**.

Make sure the DVR is connected into the Internet, and if yes, in the **Status** box of the P2P interface, it shows **Online**.

<u>Step 1</u> After you have configured the network settings, on the **Network** interface, click **Next**. The **P2P** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-21

P2P				
Enable				
After enabling P2P ar address, MAC address used only for the purp	nd connecting to Intern s, device name, device pose of remote access.	vice, the P2P will be enabled. net, we need to collect IP SN, etc. All collected info is , lease deselect the check		
Status				
Mobile Client		Device SN		
Scan to download				
			Previous	Next

#### Step 2 Enable the P2P function.

#### $\square$

After the P2P function is enabled and connected to the Internet, the system will collects your information for remote access, and the information includes but not limited to email address, MAC address, and device serial number.

You can start adding the device.

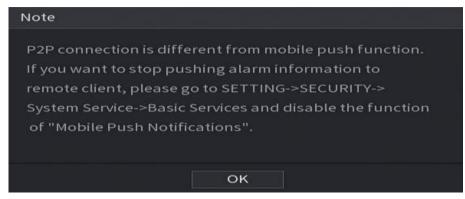
- Cell Phone Client: Use your mobile phone to scan the QR code to add the device into the Cell Phone Client, and then you can start accessing the Device.
- Platform: Obtain the Device SN by scanning the QR code. Go to the P2P management platform and add the Device SN into the platform. Then you can access and manage the device in the WAN. For details, refer to the P2P operation manual.

 $\square$ 

You can also enter the QR code of Cell Phone Client and Device SN by

clicking 🔛 on the top right of the interfaces after you have entered the Main Menu.

 If selection of this function is canceled, the Note interface is displayed. See Figure 5-22. Choose to enable it or not according to your actual need. Figure 5-22



To use this function, take adding device into Cell Phone Client as an example.

#### Adding Device into Cell Phone Client

- <u>Step 1</u> Use your cell phone to scan the QR code under Cell Phone Client to download the application.
- Step 2 On your cell phone, open the application, and then tap

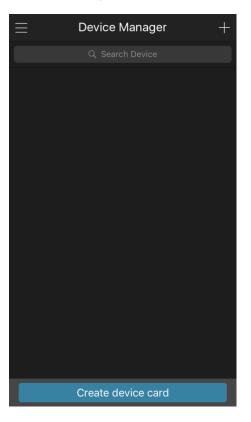
Ξ.

The menu is displayed. You can start adding the device.

1) Tap Device Manager.

The **Device Manager** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-23



2) Tap an the top right corner.

The interface requiring device initialization is displayed. A pop-up message reminding you to make sure the Device is initialized is displayed.

- 3) Tap **OK**.
  - ◇ If the Device has not been initialized, Tap **Device Initialization** to perform initializing by following the onscreen instructions.
  - ♦ If the Device has been initialized, you can start adding it directly.
- 4) Tap Add Device.

The Add Device interface is displayed.

Ш

You can add wireless device or wired device. The Manual takes adding wired device as an example.

Figure 5-24

<	P2P	
Register Mode:	P2P	
Name:		
SN:		
Username:	admin	
Password:		
Live Preview:	Extra	>
Playback:	Extra	>
Start I	Live Preview	

5) Tap **P2P**.

The **P2P** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-25

<	P2P	
Bagistor Mada:	P2P	
Register Mode:	F 4 F	
Name:		
SN:	ر المراجع المراجع	
Username:	admin	
Password:		
Live Preview:	Extra >	
Playback:	Extra >	
Start	Live Preview	

- 6) Enter a name for the DVR, the username and password, scan the QR code under **Device SN**.
- 7) Tap Start Live Preview.

The Device is added and displayed on the live view interface of the cell phone.

Figure 5-26

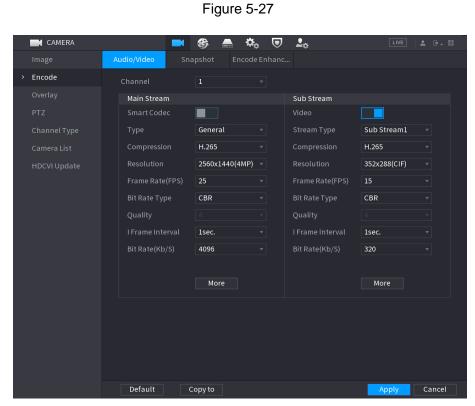


## 5.1.4.6 Configuring Encode Settings

You can configure the settings of main stream and sub stream for the Device.

You can also configure encode settings by selecting **Main Menu > CAMERA > Encode >** Audio/Video.

<u>Step 1</u> After you have configured the P2P settings, on the **Audio/Video** interface, click **Next**.



The **Encode** interface is displayed.

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the main/sub streams parameters. See Table 5-6.

Parameter	Description
Channel	In the <b>Channel</b> list, select the channel that you want to configure the settings for.
Smart Codec	Enable the smart codec function. This function can reduce the video bit stream for non-important recorded video to maximize the storage space.
Туре	<ul> <li>Main Stream: In the Type list, select General, MD (Motion Detect), or Alarm.</li> <li>Sub Stream: This setting is not configurable.</li> </ul>
Compression	<ul> <li>In the Compression list, select the encode mode.</li> <li>H.265: Main profile encoding. This setting is recommended.</li> <li>H.264H: High profile encoding. Low bit stream with high definition.</li> <li>H.264: Main profile encoding.</li> <li>H.264B: Baseline profile encoding. This setting requires higher bit stream compared with other settings for the same definition.</li> </ul>
Resolution	In the Resolution list, select resolution for the video. The maximum video resolution might be different dependent on your device model.
Frame Rate (FPS)	Configure the frames per second for the video. The higher the value is, the clearer and smoother the image will become. Frame rate changes along with the resolution. Generally, in PAL format, you can select the value from 1 through 25; in NTSC format, you can select the value from 1 through 30. However, the actual range of frame rate that you can select depends on the capability of the Device.
Bit Rate Type	In the <b>Bit Rate Type</b> list, select <b>CBR</b> (Constant Bit Rate) or <b>VBR</b> (Variable Bit Rate). If you select <b>CBR</b> , the image quality cannot be configured; if you select <b>VBR</b> , the image quality can be configured.
Quality	This function is available if you select <b>VBR</b> in the <b>Bit Rate</b> List. The bigger the value is, the better the image will become.
I Frame Interval	The interval between two reference frames.
Bit Rate (Kb/S)	In the <b>Bit Rate</b> list, select a value or enter a customized value to change the image quality. The bigger the value is, the better the image will become.
Video	Enable the function for sub stream.
Audio	<ul> <li>Click More, the More interface is displayed.</li> <li>Audio: This function is enabled by default for main stream. You need to manually enable it for sub stream 1. Once this function is enabled, the recorded video file is composite audio and video</li> </ul>
Audio Source	<ul> <li>stream.</li> <li>Audio Source: In the Audio Source list, you can select Local and HDCVI.</li> <li>Local: The audio signal is input from Audio In port.</li> </ul>
Compression	<ul> <li>HDCVI: The audio signal is input from HDCVI camera.</li> </ul>

Parameter	Description
	• Compression: In the <b>Compression</b> list, select a format that you
	need.

## 5.1.4.7 Configuring Snapshot Settings

The **Snapshot** interface is displayed.

You can configure the basic snapshot settings such as quantity of snapshot each time, channel(s) to take snapshot, and image size and quality of snapshot.

You can also configure general settings by selecting **Main Menu > CAMERA > Encode > Snapshot**.

For more information about snapshot settings, see "5.8 Configuring Snapshot Settings." Step 1 After you have configured the encode settings, on the **Encode** interface, click **Next**.

Snapshot Manual Snapshot 1 • /Time Channel 1 • Type Scheduled • Size 352x288(CIF) • Quality 4 • Interval 1 sec. •



Step 2 Configure the settings for the snapshot parameters. See Table 5-7.

Table 5-7

Parameter	Description			
Manual Snapshot	In the Manual Snapshot list, select how many snapshots you want to			
Marida Shapshot	take each time.			
Channel	In the Channel list, select the channel that you want to configure the			
Channel	settings for.			
	In the Mode list, you can select Human Face, Event, or General as			
	the event type for which you want to take a snapshot.			
	• <b>Scheduled</b> : The snapshot is taken during the scheduled period.			
	• Event: The snapshot is taken when there is an alarm event			
Туре	occurs, such as motion detection event, video loss, and local			
	alarms.			
	• Face Snapshot: The snapshot is taken when the face is			
	detected. The face detection function is support only with the			
	Channel 1.			
Size	In the Size list, select a value for the image. The bigger the value is,			
5120	the better the image will become.			

Parameter	Description
Quality	Configure the image quality by 6 levels. The higher the level is, the
Quality	better the image will become.
Interval	Configure or customize the snapshot frequency.

## 5.1.4.8 Configuring Basic Storage Settings

You can configure the settings for the situations when HDD is full, file length and time length of recorded video, and the settings if to auto-delete the old files.

You can also configure basic storage settings by selecting Main Menu > STORAGE > Basic.

<u>Step 1</u> After you have configured the encode settings, on the **Snapshot** interface, click **Next**. The **Basic** interface is displayed.

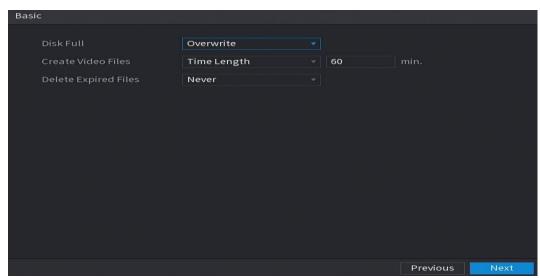


Figure 5-29

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the basic storage settings parameters.

Table 5-8

Parameter	Description				
Disk Full	<ul> <li>Configure the settings for the situation when all the read/write discs are full, and there are no more free discs.</li> <li>Select Stop to stop recording</li> <li>Select Overwrite to overwrite the recorded video files always from the earliest time.</li> <li>The locked recorded video files will not be overwritten.</li> </ul>				
Create Video Files	Configure the time length and file length for each recorded video.				
Delete Expired Files	Configure whether to delete the old files and if yes, in the <b>Delete Expired Files</b> list, select <b>Custom</b> to configure the time length for how long you want to keep the old files.				

## 5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule

You can configure the schedule for the recorded video such as channels to record, alarm settings, and the armed period.

You can also configure recorded video storage settings by selecting **Main Menu > STORAGE > Schedule > Record**.

<u>Step 1</u> After you have configured the basic storage settings, on the **Basic** interface, click **Next**. The **Record** interface is displayed.





Step 2 Configure the record settings parameters.

Table 5-9

Parameter	Description				
Channel	In the <b>Channel</b> list, select a channel to record the video.				
Pre-record	In the Pre-record list, enter the amount of time that you want to start				
Fie-lecolu	the recording in advance.				
	If there are several HDDs installed to the Device, you can set one of				
	the HDDs as the redundant HDD to save the recorded files into				
	different HDDs. In case one of the HDDs is damaged, you can find the				
	backup in the other HDD.				
	• Select Main Menu > STORAGE > Disk Manager, and then set a				
	HDD as redundant HDD.				
	• Select Main Menu > STORAGE > Schedule > Record, and then				
Redundancy	select the <b>Redundancy</b> check box.				
Redundancy	$\diamond$ If the selected channel is not recording, the redundancy function takes				
	effect next time you record no matter you select the check box or not.				
	$\diamond$ If the selected channel is recording, the current recorded files will b				
	packed, and then start recording according to the new schedule.				
	<ul> <li>Not all models support this function.</li> </ul>				
	• The redundant HDD only back up the recorded videos but not				
	snapshots.				

Parameter	Description
	Select the check box of the event type which includes General,
	Motion (motion detect, video loss, tempering, diagnosis), Alarm (IoT
Event type	alarms, local alarms, alarms from alarm box, IPC external alarms, IPC
	Offline alarms), M&A, Intelligent (IVS events, face detection), and
	POS.
	Define a period during which the configured recording setting is
Period	active.
	The system only activates the alarm in the defined period.
Сору	Click <b>Copy to</b> to copy the settings to other channels.

<u>Step 3</u> Define the video recording period by drawing or editing. By default, it is active all the time.

- Define the period by drawing.
- 1) Select the check box of event type.

Figure 5-31

🗹 General	Motion	📕 Alarm	M&A 📃	📃 Intelligent	POS

- 2) Define a period. The system supports maximum six periods.

  - ♦ Define for several days of a week: Click □ before each day one by one, the

icon switches to 2. You can define the period for the selected days simultaneously.

3) On the timeline, drag to define a period. The Device starts recoding the selected event type in the defined period.

Figure 5-32



The color bar indicates the event type that is effective in a defined period:

- Recording priority in case of event types are overlapped: M&A > Alarm > Intelligent > Motion > General.
- Select the check box of event type, and then click for the defined period.
- When selecting MD&Alarm, the MD and Alarm check boxes will be cleared respectively.
- Define the period by editing. Take Sunday as an example.
- 4) Click

The **Period** interface is displayed.

- • •									
Period									
Day									
Period 1	00:00	- 24: 00	🗸 General	Motion	🗆 Alarm	☐ M&A		🗌 Inte	POS
Period 2	03:00	- 08: 00	General	 ☑ Motion		 M&A		 Inte	Des
Period 3	10 : 00	- 14: 00	General	✓ Motion	🗌 Alarm	M&A		🗌 Inte	POS
Period 4	00:00	- 24: 00	General	Motion	🗌 Alarm	M&A		🗌 Inte	POS
Period 5	00:00	- 24: 00	General	Motion	🗌 Alarm	M&A		🗌 Inte	POS
Period 6	00:00	- 24: 00	🗌 General	Motion	🗌 Alarm	M&A		🗌 Inte	POS
Copy to									
🗌 All									
	🗌 Mon	🗌 Tue	Wed	🗌 Thu	🗌 Fr	i	🗌 Sat		Holiday
								OK	Cancel
									Cancer

Figure 5-33

- 5) Enter the time frame for the period and select the event check box.
  - $\diamond$   $\;$  There are six periods for you to set for each day.
  - ♦ Under Copy to, select All to apply the settings to all the days of a week, or select specific day(s) that you want to apply the settings to.
- 6) Click **OK** to save the settings.
- <u>Step 4</u> Click **OK** to complete the settings.

 $\square$ 

- Click **Copy** to copy the settings to other channels.
- After configuring the recording schedule settings, you need to perform the following operations to start recording according to the defined schedule.
  - Enable the alarm event and cofigure the settings for the recording channel.
     For details, see "5.10 Alarm Events Settings."
  - You need to enable the recording function, see "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."

## 5.1.4.10 Configuring Snapshot Storage Schedule

You can configure the storage schedule for the snapshot such as channels to take snapshot, alarm settings, and the armed period.

You can also configure snapshot storage settings by selecting **Main Menu > STORAGE > Schedule > Snapshot**.

<u>Step 1</u> After you have configured the video recording settings, on the **Record** interface, click **Next**.



The **Snapshot** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-34

Step 2 Configure the snapshot settings parameters.

Table 5-10

Parameter	Description
Channel	In the <b>Channel</b> list, select a channel to take a snapshot.
Event type	Select the check box of the event type which includes General,
Event type	Motion, Alarm, M&A, Intelligent, and POS.
	Define a period during which the configured snapshot setting is active.
Period	For details about defining a period, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded
	Video Storage Schedule."
Сору	Click <b>Copy to</b> copy the settings to other channels.

Step 3 Click OK.

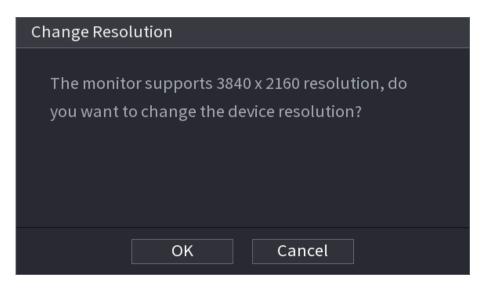
A pop-up message is displayed.

Step 4 Click OK.

The live view screen is displayed. The setting up with startup wizard is completed. You can start using the Device.

<u>Step 5</u> (Optional) After the setting with startup wizard is completed, if the connected HDMI display resolution is inconsistent with default resolution (1280\*1024), a dialog box will pop up. Choose to switch the resolution or not.

Figure 5-35



# 5.2 Live View

After you logged in the Device, the live view is displayed. The number of channels displayed depends on your model.

To enter the live view screen from other interfaces, click used on the top right of the screen.



Figure 5-36

# 5.2.1 Live View Screen

You can view the live video from the connected cameras through each channel on the screen.

 By default, the system time, channel name and channel number are displayed on each channel window. This setting can be configured by selecting Main Menu > CAMERA > Overlay > Overlay. • The figure in the bottom right corner represents channel number. If the channel position is changed or the channel name is modified, you can recognize the channel number by this figure and then perform the operations such as record query and playback.

For the icons displayed on each channel, see Table 5-11.

#### Table 5-11

lcon	Function
	Indicates recording status. This icon displays when the video is being recorded.
×	This icon displays when the motion detection occurs in the scene.
~	This icon displays when the video loss is detected.
4	This icon displays when the channel monitoring is locked.

To switch the position of two channels, point to one of the two channels, and then drag the window to the other channel.

# 5.2.2 Live View Control bar

The live view control bar provides you access to perform the operations such as playback, zoom, real-time backup, manual snapshot, voice talk, adding remote devices, and streams switch.

When you move the pointer to the top middle position of a channel window, the live view control bar is displayed. See Figure 5-37 for analog channel and Figure 5-38 for digital channel.

If there is not operation for six seconds after the control bar is displayed, the control bar hides automatically.





Table 5-12

No.	Function	No.	Function	No.	. Function	
1	Instant Playback	4	Manual Snapshot	7	Camera Registration	
2	Digital Zoom	5	Mute	/	/	
3	Instant Record	6	Audio Talk	/	/	

### 5.2.2.1 Instant Playback

You can play back the previous five minutes to sixty minutes of the recorded video.

By clicking **1**, the instant playback interface is displayed. The instant playback has the

following features:

- Move the slider to choose the time you want to start playing.
- Play, pause and close playback.
- The information such as channel name and recording status icon are shielded during instant playback and will not display until exited.
- During playback, screen split layout switch is not allowed.
- To change the playback time, select **Main Menu > SYSTEM > General > Basic**, in the **Instant Play** box, enter the time you want to play back.

🗱 SYSTEM		🚐 🏡 🛡 🤽 Live 🖾 🕂 🗒
> General	Basic Date&Time	Holiday
	Device Name	XVR
	Device No.	8
	Language	English
	Video Standard	PAL *
	Sync Remote Device	(Include language, format and time zone)
	Instant Playback	5 min.
	Logout Time	10 min. Non-login User Permission
	CAM Time Sync	
	Interval	24 hr.
	Navigation Bar	
	Mouse Pointer Speed	+
		Slow Fast
		Apply Back

Figure 5-39

### 5.2.2.2 Digital Zoom

You can enlarge a specific area of the image to view the details by either of the following two ways.

• Click , the icon switches to . Hold down the left mouse button to select the area

you want to enlarge. The area is enlarged after the left mouse button is released.

• Point to the center that you want to enlarge, rotate the wheel button to enlarge the area.

- For some models, when the image is enlarged in the first way described previously, the selected area is zoomed proportionally according to the window.
- When the image is in the enlarged status, you can drag the image toward any direction to view the other enlarged areas.
- Right-click on the enlarged image to return the original status.

### 5.2.2.3 Instant Record

You can record the video of any channel and save the clip into a USB storage device.

By clicking E, the recording is started. To stop recording, click this icon again. The clip is automatically saved into the connected USB storage device.

### 5.2.2.4 Manual Snapshot

You can take one to five snapshots of the video and save into a USB storage device.

By clicking [1], you can take snapshots. The snapshots are automatically saved into the

connected USB storage device. You can view the snapshots on your PC.

 $\square$ 

To change the quantity of snapshots, select **Main Menu > CAMERA > ENCODE > Snapshot**, in the **Manual Snap** list, select the snapshot quantity.

### 5.2.2.5 Mute (Analog channel only)

You can mute the video sound by clicking . This function is supported in single-channel view.

### 5.2.2.6 White Light (Supported on camera with white light function)

Click I to manually control the camera to turn on the white light function.

### 5.2.2.7 Siren (Supported on camera with siren function)

Click Late to manually control the camera to generate alarm sound.

### 5.2.2.8 Two-way Talk (Digital channel only)

You can perform the voice interaction between the Device and the remote device to improve efficiency of emergency. This function is supported only when the remotely connected IPC device supports bidirectional talk.

- Click , the icon switches to , the bidirectional talk of the remote device is turned on. The bidirectional talk of other digital channels is disabled.
- Click I to cancel the bidirectional talk. The bidirectional talk of other digital channels is resumed.

### 5.2.2.9 Adding Camera (Digital channel only)

You can view the information of remote devices and add new remote devices to replace the current connected devices.

By clicking **List**, the **Camera List** interface is displayed. For details about adding the remote devices, see "5.6 Configuring Remote Devices."

## 5.2.3 Navigation Bar

You can access the functions to perform operations through the function icons on the navigation bar. For example, you can access Main Menu and switch window split mode.

The navigation bar is disabled by default. It does not appear in the live view screen until it is enabled. To enable it, select **Main Menu > SYSTEM > General > Basic**, enable the Navigation Bar, and then click **Apply**.

Figure 5-40

Icon	Function
1	Open <b>Main Menu</b> .
	Expand or condense the navigation bar.
	Select view layout.
Ð	Go to the previous screen.
Ð	Go to the next screen.
t⊒	Enable tour function. The icon switches to
	Open the PTZ control panel. For details, see "5.4 Controlling PTZ Cameras."
Ø	Open the <b>Image</b> interface.
Q	This function is supported only in single-channel layout. Open the record search interface. For detail, see "5.9 Playing Back Video."
A	Open the <b>Alarm Status</b> interface to view the device alarm status. For details, see "5.21.3 Viewing Event Information."
<b>9</b>	Open the <b>CHANNEL INFO</b> interface to display the information of each channel.
<b>9</b> 4	Open the <b>Camera List</b> interface. For details, see "5.6.1 Adding Remote Devices."
	Open the <b>Network</b> interface. For details, see "5.15.1 Configuring Network Settings."
	Open the <b>Disk Manager</b> interface. For details, see "5.18.3 Configuring Disk Manager."

Table 5-13

Icon	Function
	Open the USB Management interface. For details about USB
<u> </u>	operations, see "5.14.2 Backing up Files", "5.21.2 Viewing Log
	Information", "5.20.4 Exporting and Importing System Settings",
	"5.20.6 Updating the Device."

## 5.2.4 Shortcut Menu

You can quickly access some function interfaces such as main menu, record search, PTZ setting, color setting and select the view split mode.

Right-click on the live view screen, the shortcut menu is displayed. For details about the functions of shortcut menu, see Table 5-14.

After you access any interface through shortcut menu, you can return to the previous screen by right-clicking on the current screen.

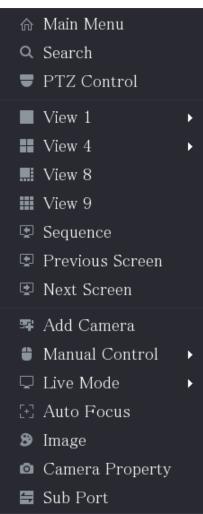


Table 5-14

Function	Description
Main Menu	Open Main Menu interface.

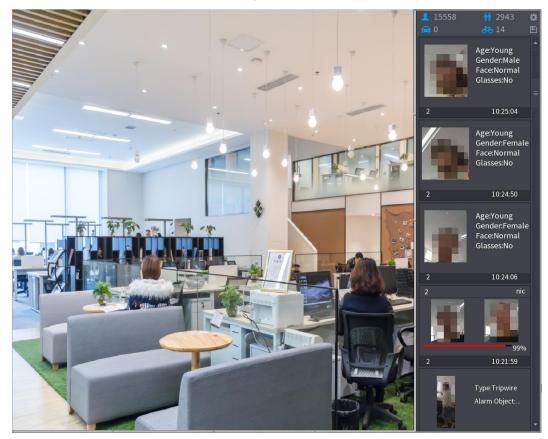
Function	Description		
Search	Open the <b>PLAYBACK</b> interface where you can search and play		
Search	back record files.		
PTZ	Open the <b>PTZ</b> interface.		
View Layout	Configure the live view screen as a single-channel layout or multi-channel layout.		
Previous Screen	Click Previous Screen to go to the previous screen. For example, if		
Nové Coroon	you are using 4-split mode, the first screen is displaying the		
Next Screen	channel 1-4, click <b>Next screen</b> , you can view channel 5-8.		
	Open the Camera List interface. For details, see "5.6 Configuring		
	Remote Devices."		
Add Camera	This parameter displays on the right-click menu only after setting at		
	least one channel to IP type in Main Menu > CAMERA > Channel		
	Туре.		
	• Select Record Mode, you can configure the recording mode		
Manual Control	as Auto or Manual, or stop the recording. You can also enable		
Manual Control	or disable snapshot function		
	• Select Alarm Mode, you can configure alarm output settings.		
	• Select <b>General</b> , the layout of live view screen is as default.		
Live Mode	• Select Face, the detected face snapshots are displayed in the		
	bottom of the live view screen.		
	Point to the channel window and right-click on it to open the		
	shortcut menu, and then click Auto Focus.		
Auto Focus			
	Not all cameras support this function.		
Imaga	Open the Image interface where you can adjust the video image		
Image	color.		
Camera Property	Click to modify the camera properties.		
Sub Port	Click to switch to extra screen control.		

## 5.2.5 Al Preview Mode

You can view the detected faces snapshots and comparison results of detected faces and the faces in the library, and play back the recorded picture file.

To display the AI preview mode, the face detection function must be enabled. For details, see "5.11.1.1 Face Detection."

Right-click on the live view screen to display the shortcut menu, and then select **Live Mode > AI Mode**, the AI preview mode interface is displayed.



- 15558: Indicates the quantity of detected faces from 0 A.M. to midnight.
- <u>11</u> 2943: Indicates the quantity of detected humans 0 A.M. to midnight.
- Indicates the quantity of detected motor vehicles 0 A.M. to midnight.
- 14: Indicates the quantity of detected non-motor vehicles 0 A.M. to midnight.
- Click this icon and then select the face attributes that you want to display on the AI preview mode. Maximum four attributes are supported to display. See Figure 5-43.
- Click this icon to export counting report in .csv format. The report information includes date, starting time, ending time, and the number of human, vehicle and face. The title of report is named as "device name\_ XVR\_AI\_Statistics\_starting time\_ending time.csv".

	0						
Properties							
Show Fac Human B	Mon-Motor Attribute: Attribute: Attribute: Attribute:	Similarity%					
Channel Time	Channel Time	Channel Time					
Select attributes to disp Age Gender	lay Max. set 4 attri Exp. Glasses	Beard Mask					
		OK Cancel					

Figure 5-43

## 5.2.6 Channel Sequence

You can adjust the channel sequence displayed on live interface on actual needs.

Ŵ

The live view interface displays the default channel sequence after restoring factory defaults. <u>Step 1</u> Right-click on the live view interface and select **Sequence**.

The **Sequence** interface is displayed.

 $\square$ 

- The system displays the maximum number of window splits supported by the DVR after **selecting** Sequence.
- The Sequence interface displays only the channel name and channel number of

added remote devices. 🞴 represents the remote device is online, and

represents the remote device is offline.

### Figure 5-44 Sequence

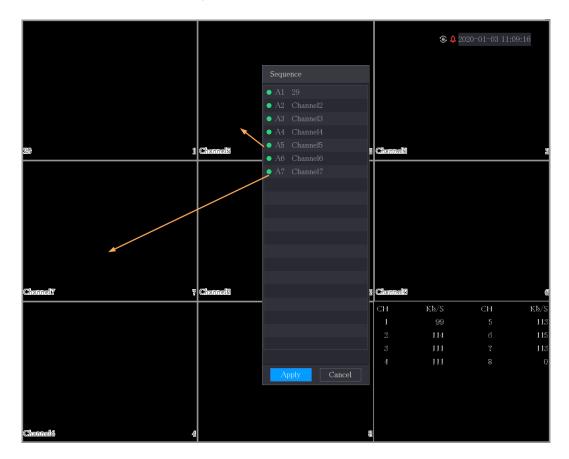
Sequence				
• A1	29			
• A2	Channel2			
• A3	Channel3			
• A4	Channel4			
• A5	Channel5			
• A6	Channel6			
• A7	Channel7			
A	oply	Cancel		

Step 2 Adjust channel sequence.

- Drag a channel to the target window split.
- Drag a window split to another to change the sequence.

You can view the channel sequence according to the channel number on the lower-right corner of the window split.

Figure 5-45 Adjusted Sequence



## 5.2.7 Color Setting

You can adjust the video image color effect such as sharpness, brightness, and contrast. The parameters are different according to the connected camera type. Take analog channel as an example.

 $\square$ 

Parameters displayed on the interface vary from different cameras, the actual interface shall prevail.

In the live view screen, right-click on the analog channel to see the shortcut menu, and then select **Image**, the **Image** interface is displayed.

For details, see "5.5.1 Configuring Image Settings."

	3		
Image			
Period	Period 1		
Effective Time	00:00 - 24:0	00	
Saturation	0	<b>+</b> 50	
Brightness	0	<b>+</b> 50	
Contrast	0	<b>+</b> 50	
Hue	0	<b>+</b> 50	
Sharpness	0	+ 1	
Color Mode	Standard		
Position	•	<b>+</b> 16	
Custom	Default Apply	Back	

Table 5-15

Parameter	Description				
Period	Divide 24 hours into two periods and configure the corresponding				
Penod	color settings.				
Effective Time	Enable the function and then set the effective time for each period.				
	Adjust the sharpness of image edge. The bigger the value is, the				
Sharpness	more obvious the image edge, and the noise is also greater.				
	The value ranges from 1 to 15. The default value is 1.				
Hue	Adjust the hue of image. The value ranges from 0 to 100. The				
пие	default value is 50.				
	Adjust the image brightness. The value ranges from 0 to 100. The				
	default value is 50.				
	The bigger the value is, the brighter the image will become. You				
Brightness	can adjust this value when the image as a whole looks dark or				
	bright. However, the image is likely to become dim if the value is				
	too big.				
	The recommended range is between 40 and 60.				
	Adjust the image contrast. The bigger the value is, the more				
	obvious the contrast between the light area and dark area will				
	become. You can adjust this value when the contrast is not				
Contrast	obvious. However, if the value is too big, the dark area is likely to				
Contrast	become darker and the light area over exposed. If the value is too				
	small, the image is likely to become dim.				
	The value ranges from 0 to 100. The default value is 50. The				
	recommended range is between 40 and 60.				

Figure 5-46

Parameter	Description
Saturation	<ul> <li>Adjust the color shades. The bigger the value, the lighter the color will become. This value does not influence the general image lightness.</li> <li>The value ranges from 0 to 100. The default value is 50. The recommended range is between 40 and 60.</li> </ul>
Color Mode	In the Color Mode list, you can select Standard, Soft, Bright, Vivid, Bank, Customized 1, Customized 2, Customized 3, and Customized 4. The sharpness, hue, brightness, contrast and saturation will adjust automatically according to the selected color mode.
EQ	<ul> <li>Enhance the image effect. Adjust the effect value.</li> <li>Click , image is adjusted to the optimized effect automatically.</li> <li>Click , the current effect setting will be locked.</li> <li>Only HD analog channel supports this function.</li> </ul>
Position	Adjust the display position of the image in the channel window. The value indicates pixel. The default value is 16.
Custom	<ol> <li>You can customize four color modes.</li> <li>Click Custom. The Custom Color interface is displayed.</li> <li>In the Color Mode list, select Custom 1, for example. Then configure the settings for sharpness, hue, brightness, contrast and saturation. If you select All, the configuration will applies to all four customized color modes.</li> <li>Click OK.</li> <li>On the Image interface, in the Color Mode list, you can select the customized color mode.</li> </ol>

## 5.2.8 Live View Display

## 5.2.8.1 Configuring Display Settings

You can configure the display effect such as displaying time title and channel title, adjusting image transparency, and selecting the resolution.

### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > DISPLAY > Display.

The **Display** interface is displayed.

Main Screen		Sub Screen		
Output Port	VGA/HDMI			
	Time Title	Output Port		
	Channel Title			
	Original Ratio	Show Message		
	AI Rule			
	SMD Preview			
	Live Audio			
	•	<b>+</b> 50		
Transparency	-•	+ 0%		
	1280x1024			
Live Mode	General			
			Apply	Back

Figure 5-47

 $\underline{Step \ 2}$  Configure the settings for the display parameters.

Table 5-16

Paramet	er	Description
	Output Port	Indicates the main screen port.
		Select the Time Title check box, the current system time
	Time Title	displays in each channel window in live view screen. To hide
		the time, clear the check box.
		Select the Channel Title check box, the channel name,
	Channel Title	channel number and recording status display in each channel
	Channel Inte	window in live view screen. To hide the time, clear the check
		box.
Main	Original Ratio	Select the Original Ratio check box, the video image
Screen		displays in its actual size in the channel window.
Ocieen	AI Rule	Select the AI Rule check box to enable AI rule showing
		function. It is enabled by default
	SMD Preview	Display the SMD rule box while preview. It is disabled by
		default.
	Live Audio	Select the Live Audio check box to enable the audio
	Live Addio	adjustment function in the channel window on the live view
	Volume	screen.
	Volume	Move the slider to adjust the volume of live audio.
	Transparency	Configure the transparency of the graphical user interface

Paramete	Parameter Description					
-		(GUI). The higher the value, the more transparent the GUI				
		becomes.				
	Resolution	Select resolution for the video. The default resolution for VGA port and HDMI port is 1280×1024.				
		Some of the resolution options might not be supported on the HDMI port.				
		<ul> <li>General: No information is displayed on the channel window.</li> </ul>				
	Live Mode	<ul> <li>Al Mode: Displays the detected face snapshots.</li> </ul>				
		Not all models support this function.				
		Enable extra screen function. After this function is enabled,				
	Enable	you can select which port as extra screen port, and the other				
		port automatically becomes the main screen port.				
	Output Port	Select the VGA port or HDMI port as the port connected by a				
		secondary monitor. For example, if you select HDMI port as				
		the extra screen port, the VGA port automatically becomes				
Sub		the main screen port.				
Screen		Select resolution for the video. The default resolution for VGA				
	Resolution	port and HDMI port is 1280×720.				
		Some of the resolution options might not be supported on the				
		HDMI port.				
	Show	After it is enabled, the sub screen will display alarm message				
	Message	when an alarm is triggered.				
		·				
• The	main menu does	not display on the extra screen.				
• If you	• If you do not enable the extra screen function, both the VGA port and HDMI port					
displ	ay the same ima	ge.				

## 5.2.8.2 Configuring Zero-Channel Settings

You can view several video sources on one channel on the web end.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > DISPLAY > Zero-Channel.

The Zero-Channel interface is displayed.

Figure	5-48
	0.10

Enable			
	H.264H		
	704x576(D1)		
	25		
Bit Rate(Kb/S)	1024		
		Apply	Back

Step 2 Configure the settings for the zero-channel parameters.

Table 5-17

Parameter	Description				
Enable	Enable zero-channel function.				
Compression	In the <b>Compression</b> list, select the video compression standard				
Compression	according to the device capability. The default is H.265.				
Resolution	In the <b>Resolution</b> list, select the video resolution. The default is				
Resolution	704×576 (D1).				
Frame Rate	Select a value between 1 and 25 for PAL standard, and between 1				
	and 30 for NTSC standard. The actual arrange is decided and				
(FPS)	selected dependent on the Device capability.				
Bit Data (Kh/S)	The default value is 1024Kb/S. The actual arrange is decided and				
Bit Rate (Kb/S)	selected dependent on the Device capability and frame rate.				

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to save the settings.

multi-channel modes, and then you can view the local video image.

## 5.2.8.3 Configuring TV

 $\square$ 

Not all models support this function.

You can adjust the border margins in top, bottom, left and right directions as well as the brightness of the monitor connected to the Video out port of the Device.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > DISPLAY > TV Adjust.

The **TV Adjust** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-49

Top Margin	-0	+	0
Bottom Margin	- 0	+	0
Left Margin	- •	+	0
Right Margin	- •	+	0
Brightness	0	+ '	128

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the parameters according to your actual situation.

Step 3 Click Apply to complete the settings.

## 5.2.9 Configuring Tour Settings

You can configure a tour of selected channels to repeat playing videos. The videos display in turn according to the channel group configured in tour settings. The system displays one channel group for a certain period and then automatically changes to the next channel group. <u>Step 1</u> Select **Main Menu > DISPLAY > Tour Setting**.

The **Tour** interface is displayed. There are **Main Screen** tab and **Sub Screen** tab, see Figure 5-50 and Figure 5-51.

		Figure 5-50	
Main Screen	Sub Screen		
Interval(sec.)			
	View 1		
	View 1		
	View 1		
8 ✓ 1 √ 1		Channel Group	
$2 \checkmark 2$			
3 🗸 3			
Add	Modify Delete	Move Up Move down	
Default			Apply Back

								Fig	ure 5	-51					
N	/lain Scr	een													
					View										
		$\checkmark$							Channel	Grou	р				
	1	$\checkmark$	1												
		$\checkmark$													
		$\checkmark$													
		1 1		3.4 110			1.	1							
	A	ard		Modif		De	lete	M	love Up		Move do	wn			
	Def	ault												Back	

Step 2 Configure the settings for the tour parameters for both Main Screen and Extra Screen.

	Tab	le	5-1	8
--	-----	----	-----	---

Parameter	Description
Enable	Enable tour function.
	Enter the amount of time that you want each channel group displays
Interval (Sec.)	on the screen. The value ranges from 5 seconds to 120 seconds, and
	the default value is 5 seconds.
Motion Tour,	Select the View 1 or View 8 for Motion Tour and Alarm Tour (system
Alarm Tour	alarm events).
Live Layout	In the <b>Live Layout</b> list, select <b>View 1</b> , <b>View 4</b> , <b>View 8</b> , or other modes that are supported by the Device.
Channel Group	<ul> <li>Display all channel groups under the current Window Split setting.</li> <li>Add a channel group: Click Add, in the pop-up Add Group channel, select the channels to form a group, and then click Save.</li> <li>Delete a channel group: Select the check box of any channel group, and then click Delete.</li> <li>Edit a channel group: Select the check box of any channel group and then click Modify, or double-click on the group. The Modify Channel Group dialog box is displayed. You can regroup the channels.</li> <li>Click Move up or Move down to adjust the position of channel group.</li> </ul>



- On the top right of the live view screen, use the left mouse button or press Shift to switch between (image switching is allowed) and (image switching is not allowed) to turn on/off the tour function.
- On the navigation bar, click 🛄 to enable the tour and click 🛄 to disable it.

### Adding a Channel Group

Step 1 Click Add.

The Add Group interface is displayed.



Add Group		
12345678		
Group Sequence:		
	OK	Back

Step 2 Select the channels that you want to group for tour. See Figure 5-53.

If you want to select more than one channel, in the Live Layout list, do not select View 1.

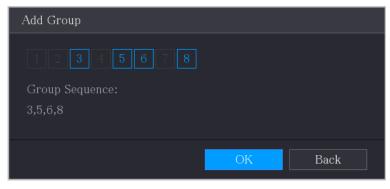


Figure 5-53

<u>Step 3</u> Click **OK** to complete the settings.

#### Modifying a Channel Group

Double-click on a channel group, the **Channel Group Modified** interface is displayed. You can modify channel group and click **OK** to complete the settings.

Figure 5-54

Channel Group Modified
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8
Group Sequence: 5,6,7,8
OK Back

# 5.2.10 Quick Operation Bar

You can quickly access to the function modules on function tiles and setting menu through shortcut icons on quick operation bar.

This topic uses **ALARM** and **CAMERA** an examples to show you how to quickly access to other modules.

### Shortcut Icons on Function Titles

Click **ALARM** to enter the **ALARM** interface.

	alarm	🔕 💄 🗄	6 🖗 🗘 🗘 📮	
>	Alarm Info	Туре	All	
	Alarm Status	Start Time	2020 - 03 - 01 00 : 00 : 00	
	Alarm-in Port	End Time	2020 - 03 - 02 00 : 00 : 00	Search
	Alarm-out Port			
	Video Detection	55 Time	Type	Play 🔺
	video Detection		0:17:40 <video 3="" :="" loss=""></video>	
	Exception		0:17:40 <video 4="" :="" loss=""></video>	
	Disarming		0:17:40 <video 5="" :="" loss=""></video>	
			0:17:40 <video 6="" :="" loss=""> 0:17:40 <video 7="" :="" loss=""></video></video>	
			0:17:40 No Disk	
			0:17:40           0:17:40             0:17:40	
			0:17:40 <video 9="" :="" loss=""></video>	
			0:17:40 <video 10="" :="" loss=""></video>	
			0:17:41 <video 11="" :="" loss=""></video>	
			0:17:41 <video 12="" :="" loss=""></video>	
			0:17:41 <video 13="" :="" loss=""></video>	
			0:17:41 <video 14="" :="" loss=""></video>	
		54 2020-03-012	0:17:41 <video 15="" :="" loss=""></video>	
		55 2020-03-01 2	0:17:41 <video 16="" :="" loss=""></video>	•
			< 1/1 > Goto	Backup Details

lcon	Description
$\otimes$	Click to jump to <b>SEARCH</b> interface.
	Click to jump to <b>ALARM</b> interface.
<b>S</b>	Click to jump to <b>AI</b> interface.
	Click to jump to <b>POS</b> interface.
$\bigcirc$	Click to jump to <b>NETWORK</b> interface.
en la	Click to jump to MAINTAIN interface.
$\Diamond$	Click to jump to <b>BACKUP</b> interface.
	Click to jump to <b>DISPLAY</b> interface.
	Click to jump to <b>AUDIO</b> interface.

# Shortcut Icons on Setting Menu

Click **CAMERA** to enter the **CAMERA** interface.

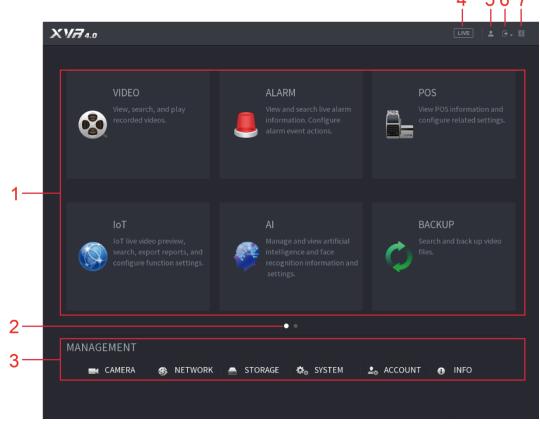
Figure 5-56

CAMERA		🍪 🚔 🏞 🛡	<b>L</b> o	LIVE 🔔 🗗 🗸 🗒
Image	Please select			Browse
Encode				
Overlay				
PTZ	Channel	Progress		Version
D/A Conversion				
Camera List				
> HDCVI Update				
				Update
				Opuare

lcon	Description
Ĭ	Click to jump to CAMERA interface.
(F)	Click to jump to <b>NETWORK</b> interface.
	Click to jump to <b>STORAGE</b> interface.
<b>\$</b>	Click to jump to <b>SYSTEM</b> interface.
	Click to jump to <b>SECURITY</b> interface.
<b>L</b> .	Click to jump to <b>ACCOUNT</b> interface.

# 5.3 Entering Main Menu

Right-click on the live view screen, the shortcut menu is displayed, Click Main Menu and then login the system. The Main Menu is displayed, see Figure 5-57.



	Tabl	e	5-	21
--	------	---	----	----

No.	Icon	Description	
1	Function tiles	<ul> <li>Includes nine function tiles: SEARCH, ALARM, SMART DETECTION, POS, IoT, MAINTAIN, BACKUP, DISPLAY and AUDIO. Click each tile to open the configuration interface of the tile.</li> <li>SEARCH: Search for and play back the recorded video saved on the Device.</li> <li>ALARM: Search for alarm information and configure alarm event actions.</li> <li>SMART DETECTION: Search SMD, face detection, and IVS information, and configure related settings.</li> <li>POS: You can connect the Device to the POS (Point of Sale) machine and receive the information from it.</li> <li>IoT: IoT live video preview, search, export reports, and configure function settings.</li> <li>MAINTAIN: You can view log and system information, test network and do other maintenance work.</li> <li>BACKUP: Search and back up the video files to the external storage device such as USB storage device.</li> <li>DISPLAY: Configure the display effect such as displaying content, image transparency, and resolution, and enable the zero-channel function.</li> <li>AUDIO: Manage audio files and configure the playing schedule. The audio file can be played in response to an alarm event if the voice prompts function is enabled.</li> </ul>	
2	Switch icon	indicates the current page of main menu. Click to switch to the next page or click or to turn page.	
3	Setting menu	Includes six configurations through which you can configure camera settings, network settings, storage settings, system settings, account settings, and view information.	
4	Live	Click to go to the live view screen.	
5	<b>.</b>	When you point to . , the current user account is displayed.	
6		Click , select Logout, Reboot, or Shutdown according to your actual situation.	

No.	Icon	Description
7	99 02	<ul> <li>Displays Cell Phone Client and Device SN QR Code.</li> <li>Cell Phone Client: Use your mobile phone to scan the QR code to add the device into the Cell Phone Client, and then you can start accessing the Device from your cell phone.</li> <li>Device SN: Obtain the Device SN by scanning the QR code. Go to the P2P management platform and add the Device SN into the platform. Then you can access and manage the device in the WAN. For details, refer to the P2P operation manual. You can also configure P2P function in the local configurations. See "5.1.4.5 Configuring P2P Settings."</li> </ul>

# **5.4 Controlling PTZ Cameras**

PTZ is a mechanical platform that carries a camera and a protective cover and performs overall control remotely. A PTZ can move in both horizontal and vertical direction to provide all-around view to the camera.

Before operating PTZ, ensure the network connection between PTZ and the Device.

# **5.4.1 Configuring PTZ Connection Settings**

You need to configure the PTZ connection settings before use.

- Local connection: RS-485 Port for connecting speed dome or coaxial cable for connecting coaxial camera.
- Remote connection: local area network.
- <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > CAMERA > PTZ.

The **PTZ** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-58

CAMERA		🚱 🛋	ي چې	<b>L</b> .	LIVE	
Image						
Encode						
Overlay	<b>FERENCESSON</b>					
> PTZ						
D/A Conversion						+ +
Camera List			TRUK			
HDCVI Update						
	A STATE	K		Control Mode	HDCVI	
	22227/		E.		HDCVI3.0	
				Baud Rate	9600	
					None	
	Copy to				Apply	Back

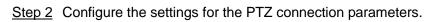


Table	5-22
-------	------

Parameter	Description
Channel	In the Channel list, select the channel that you want to connect the PTZ
Channel	camera to.
	Local: Connect through RS-485 port or coaxial cable.
Туре	• Remote: Connect through network by adding IP address of PTZ
	camera to the Device.
	In the Control Mode list, select Serial Port or HDCVI. For HDCVI series
Control Mode	product, select <b>HDCVI</b> . The control signal is sent to the PTZ through the
Control Mode	coaxial cable. For the serial mode, the control signal is sent to the PTZ
	through the RS-485 port.
Protocol	In the <b>Protocol</b> list, select the protocol for the PTZ camera. For example,
FICIOCOI	select HDCVI3.0.
	In the Address box, enter the address for PTZ camera. The default is 1.
Address	The entered address must be the same with the address configured on
	the PTZ camera; otherwise the PTZ camera cannot be controlled from
	the Device.
Baud Rate	In the Baud Rate list, select the baud rate for the PTZ camera. The
Dadu Nale	default is 9600.
Data Bits	The default value is 8.
Stop Bits	The default value is 1.
Parity	The default value is NONE.

Step 3 Click Apply to save the settings.

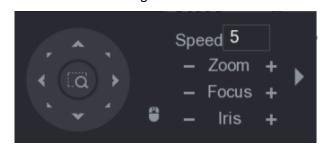
Click **Copy** to copy the settings to other channels.

## **5.4.2 Working with PTZ Control Panel**

PTZ control panel performs the operations such as directing camera in eight directions, adjusting zoom, focus and iris settings, and quick positioning.

### **Basic PTZ Control Panel**

Right-click on the live view screen and then select **PTZ**. The PTZ control panel is displayed. Figure 5-59



The functions with buttons in gray are not supported by the system.

Table 5-23

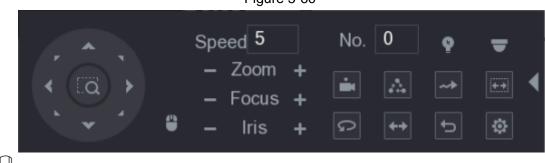
Parameter	Description
Speed	Controls the movement speed. The bigger the value is, the faster the
Opeed	movement will be.
Zoom	Zoom out.
	E Zoom in.
Focus	Focus far.
	E Focus near.
Iris	E: Image darker.
1115	E Image brighter.
PTZ movement	Supports eight directions.

Parameter	Description		
	<ul> <li>Fast positioning button.</li> <li>Positioning: Click and to enter the fast positioning screen, and then click anywhere on the live view screen, the PTZ will turn to this point and move it to the middle of the screen.</li> <li>Zooming: On the fast positioning screen, drag to draw a square on the view. The square supports zooming.</li> <li>Dragging upward is to zoom out, and dragging downward is to zoom in.</li> <li>The smaller the square, the larger the zoom effect.</li> <li>Not all models support this function and can only be controlled through mouse operations.</li> </ul>		
1	Click , you can control the four directions (left, right, up, and down) PTZ movement through mouse operation.		
	Click to open the expanded PTZ control panel.		

## Expanded PTZ Control Panel

On the basic PTZ control panel, click to open the expanded PTZ control panel to find more options.





- The functions with buttons in gray are not supported by the system.
- Right-click once to return to the interface of PTZ basic control panel.

Icon	Function	lcon	Function
	Preset	Q	Pan
<b>*</b> *•	Tour	<b>+</b> +	Flip
*	Pattern	Û,	Reset

Table 5-24

<b>++</b>	Scan	\$	Click the <b>Auxiliary Config</b> icon to open the PTZ functions settings interface.
Ŷ	Auxiliary	4	Click the Enter Menu icon to open the MENU OPERATION interface.

## **5.4.3 Configuring PTZ Functions**

## **5.4.3.1 Configuring Presets**

Step 1 On the Expanded PTZ Control Panel, click

The **Preset** interface is displayed. Figure 5-61

PTZ		-	
Preset	Tour	Pattern	Scan
•		Pres	set 1 Setting dete Preset

- Step 2 Click the direction arrows to the required position.
- <u>Step 3</u> In the **Preset** box, enter the value to represent the required position.
- Step 4 Click Setting to complete the preset settings.

### 5.4.3.2 Configuring Tours

Step 1 On the Expanded PTZ Control Panel, click

The **PTZ** interface is displayed.

- Step 2 Click the Tour tab.
  - The **Tour** interface is displayed.

PTZ				
Preset	Tour	Pattern Scan		Scan
			reset 'our No Add F Delete Delete	Preset Preset

- <u>Step 3</u> In the **Tour No**. box, enter the value for the tour route.
- <u>Step 4</u> In the **Preset** box, enter the preset value.
- Step 5 Click Add Preset.

A preset will be added for this tour.

- You can repeat adding more presets.
- Click **Delete Preset** to delete the preset for this tour. This operation can be repeated to delete more presets. Some protocols do not support deleting.

### 5.4.3.3 Configuring Patterns

Step 1 On the Expanded PTZ Control Panel, click

The **PTZ** interface is displayed.

- Step 2 Click the Pattern tab.
  - The Pattern interface is displayed.

PTZ				
Preset	Tour	Pattern Scan		
		Pattern 1 Start		
			End	

- <u>Step 3</u> In the **Pattern** box, enter the value for pattern.
- <u>Step 4</u> Click **Start** to perform the directions operations. You can also go to the PTZ Control Panel to perform the operations of adjusting zoom, focus, iris, and directions.
- <u>Step 5</u> On the **PTZ** interface, click **End** to complete the settings.

### 5.4.3.4 Configuring Scan

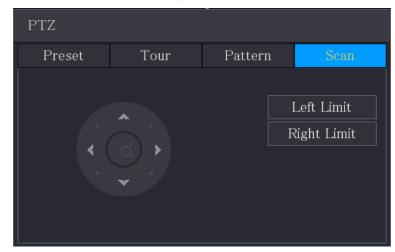
Step 1 On the Expanded PTZ Control Panel, click

The **PTZ** interface is displayed.

Step 2 Click the Scan tab.

The Scan interface is displayed.

Figure 5-64

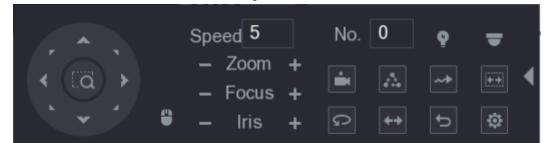


Step 3 Click the direction arrows to position the left and right limits.

## 5.4.4 Calling PTZ Functions

After you have configured the PTZ settings, you can call the PTZ functions for monitoring from the Expanded PTZ Control Panel.

Figure 5-65



### 5.4.4.1 Calling Presets

Step 1 On the expanded PTZ Control Panel, in the No. box, enter the value of the preset that you want to call.

<u>Step 2</u> Click to call the preset.

Step 3 Click again to stop calling the preset.

### 5.4.4.2 Calling Tours

- <u>Step 1</u> On the Expanded PTZ Control Panel, in the **No.** box, enter the value of the tour that you want to call.
- Step 2 Click to call the tour.
- Step 3 Click again to stop calling the tour.

### 5.4.4.3 Calling Patterns

- <u>Step 1</u> On the Expanded PTZ Control Panel, in the **No.** box, enter the value of the pattern that you want to call.
- Step 2 Call to call the pattern.

The PTZ camera moves according to the configured pattern repeatedly.

Step 3 Click again to stop calling the pattern.

### 5.4.4.4 Calling AutoScan

- <u>Step 1</u> On the Expanded PTZ Control Panel, in the **No.** box, enter the value of the border that you want to call.
- Step 2 Click

The PTZ camera performs scanning according to the configured borders.

Step 3 Click again to stop auto scanning.

### 5.4.4.5 Calling AutoPan

Step 1 On the Expanded PTZ Control Panel, click 2 to start moving in horizontal direction.

Step 2 Click again to stop moving.

### 5.4.4.6 Using AUX Button

On the Expanded PTZ Control Panel, click . , the AUX setting interface is displayed.

- In the **Shortcut Aux** list, select the option that corresponds to the applied protocol.
- In the Aux No. box, enter the number that corresponds to the AUX switch on the decoder.

Figure 5-66

Auxiliary			
Shortcut Aux			
NONE 🔻	On	Off	
Aux No.			
1	On	Off	

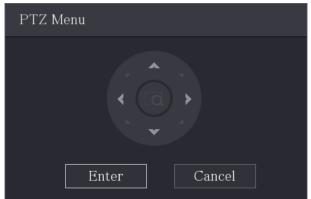
## 5.4.5 Calling OSD Menu

For the coaxial camera, you can call the OSD menu through the Expanded PTZ Control Panel.

Step 1 On the Expanded PTZ Control Panel, click

The PTZ Menu interface is displayed.

Figure 5-67



Step 2 Click Enter.

The OSD menu is displayed.

Figure 5-68



<u>Step 3</u> On the **PTZ Menu** interface, click the arrow button to select the onscreen parameters. <u>Step 4</u> Click **Enter** to complete the settings.

# 5.5 Configuring Camera Settings

# 5.5.1 Configuring Image Settings

You can configure the image settings such as saturation, contrast, brightness, sharpness for each connected camera.

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > CAMERA > Image.

The **Image** interface is displayed. See Figure 5-69 for analog channel and Figure 5-70 for digital channel.

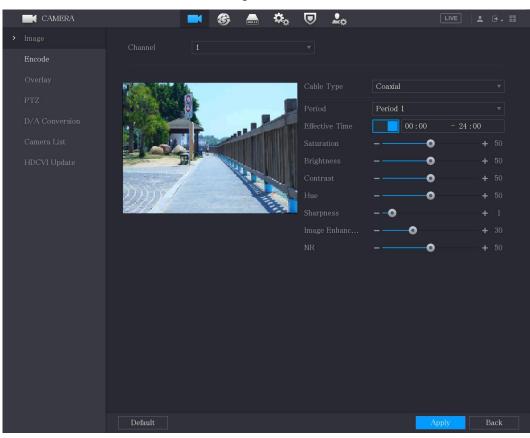


Figure 5-70

	CAMERA		<b>—</b> 🚱	🚔 🌣	<b>▼                                    </b>		LIVE	L .	910 910
>									
	Overlay		2017-1	1-03 09:50:36		Day			
							•		
		The Distance of the local distance of the lo	and the second second				•		
			2				•		
							•		
			and F				More		
		CAM 10	n an gangaran						
		Default	Refresh				Apply	Back	

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the image parameters.

On the digital channel interface, click **More** to display more parameters.

Table	5-25
-------	------

Parameter	Description	
Channel	In the <b>Channel</b> list, select the channel that you want to configure.	
Cable Type	In the <b>Cable Type</b> list, select the cable type that the camera uses.	
	Not all models support this function.	
Period	In the <b>Period</b> list, select a time period for the image settings. The	
Fenou	image settings will be only used during the selected period.	
	Enable the effective function.	
Effective Time	In the Effective Time box, enter the start time and end time for the	
	period you selected.	
	Adjusts the color shades. The bigger the value, the lighter the color	
	will become. This value does not influence the general image	
Saturation	lightness.	
	The value ranges from 0 to 100. The default value is 50. The	
	recommended range is between 40 and 60.	

Parameter	Description
	Adjusts the image contrast. The bigger the value is, the more obvious
	the contrast between the light area and dark area will become. You
	can adjust this value when the contrast is not obvious. However, if the
Contract	value is too big, the dark area is likely to become darker and the light
Contrast	area over exposed. If the value is too small, the image is likely to
	become dim.
	The value ranges from 0 to 100. The default value is 50. The
	recommended range is between 40 and 60.
	Adjusts the image brightness. The bigger the value is, the brighter the
	image will become. You can adjust this value when the image as a
Brightness	whole looks dark or bright. However, the image is likely to become dim
Brightness	if the value is too big.
	The value ranges from 0 to 100. The default value is 50. The
	recommended range is between 40 and 60.
	Adjusts the hue of image. The value ranges from 0 to 100. The default
Hue	value is 50.
	Adjusts the sharpness of image edge. The bigger the value is, the
Sharpness	more obvious the image edge, and the noise is also greater.
	The value ranges from 1 to 15. The default value is 1.
Imaga Enhance	Adjusts the image definition. The bigger the value is, the clearer the
Image Enhance	image will become, but there will be more noises.
NR	Reduces the noises from image. The bigger the value is, the better
INR	the image will become.
	In the Config File list, select Day, Night, Normal, or Switch By
	Period. The system configures the parameters correspondingly.
	Day: Apply the configuration during daytime.
Config File	Night: Apply the configuration during nighttime.
	Normal: Apply the configuration during day and night.
	• Switch by Period: If you select this option, you need to configure
	the sunrise time and sunset time where you are located.
Mirror	Enable the function, the left and right side of the video image will be
WIITO	switched. It is disabled by default.
	This function specially applies to the image which frame rate is
2D Donoino	configured as 2 at least. It reduces the noises by making use of the
3D Denoise	information between two frames. The bigger the value is, the better
	the effect.
Flip	In the <b>Flip</b> list, you can select <b>180°</b> to change the video image display.
Flip	By default, the setting is <b>No Flip</b> .
Light	In the Light list, select Close or Enable to use the backlight

Parameter	Description
Scene Mode	<ul> <li>Configure the white balance to adjust the general hue of the image.</li> <li>The default setting is Auto.</li> <li>Auto: Automatically apply white balance to different colors to make the image color display normally.</li> <li>Sunny: Apply the threshold value to sunny environment.</li> </ul>
	<ul><li>Night: Apply the threshold value to night.</li><li>Customized: Manually adjust the Red Gain and Blue Gain values.</li></ul>
Day & Night	<ul> <li>Configure the color and black&amp;white mode of the image. This setting is not affected by the configuration files. The default setting is Auto.</li> <li>Color: The camera outputs color image only.</li> <li>Auto: Depends on the camera, such as overall brightness and whether there is an IR light, either color image or black&amp;white image is output.</li> <li>B/W: The camera outputs Black and white image only.</li> <li>By Time: The camera outputs image according to the configured sunrise time and sunset time.</li> </ul>

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

# 5.5.2 Configuring Encode Settings

### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > CAMERA > Encode > Audio/Video.

Figure 5-71 CAMERA **Q**<sub>0</sub> G ▣ Main Stream Sub Stream Coding Strategy General General Sub Stream1 1280x1440(4M-N) -352x288(CIF) CBR 1sec. 1sec. 320 More More Default Copy to Cancel Apply

The Audio/Video interface is displayed.

Step 2 Configure the settings for the main/sub streams parameters.

Table 5-26

Parameter	Description	
Channel	In the <b>Channel</b> list, select the channel that you want to configure the settings for.	
Coding Strategy	<ul> <li>General: Uses general coding strategy.</li> <li>Smart Codec: Enables the smart codec function. This function can reduce the video bit stream for non-important recorded video to maximize the storage space.</li> <li>Al Codec: Enables the Al codec function. This function can reduce the video bit stream for non-important recorded video to maximize the storage space.</li> </ul>	
Туре	<ul> <li>Main Stream: In the Type list, select General, Motion, or Alarm.</li> <li>Sub Stream: This setting is not configurable.</li> </ul>	
Compression	<ul> <li>In the Compression list, select the encode mode.</li> <li>H.265: Main profile encoding. This setting is recommended.</li> <li>H.264H: High profile encoding. Low bit stream with high definition.</li> <li>H.264: General profile encoding.</li> <li>H.264B: Baseline profile encoding. This setting requires higher bit stream compared with other settings for the same definition.</li> </ul>	
Bit Rate Type	In the <b>Bit Rate Type</b> list, select resolution for the video. The maximum video resolution might be different dependent on your device model.	
Frame Rate (FPS)	Configure the frames per second for the video. The higher the value, the clearer and smoother the image will become. Frame rate changes along with the resolution. Generally, in PAL format, you can select the value from 1 through 25; in NTSC format, you can select the value from 1 through 30. However, the specific range of frame rate that you can select depends on the capability of the Device.	
Quality	This function is available if you select <b>VBR</b> in the <b>Bit Rate</b> List. The higher the value, the better the image will become.	
I Frame Interval Bit Rate (Kb/S)	The interval between two reference frames. In the <b>Bit Rate</b> list, select a value or enter a customized value to change the image quality. The bigger the value is, the better the image will become	
Video	image will become. Enable the function for sub stream.	
Audio	<ul> <li>Click More, the More interface is displayed.</li> <li>Audio: This function is enabled by default for main stream. You need to manually enable it for sub stream 1. Once this function is enabled, the recorded video file is composite audio and video</li> </ul>	
Audio Source	<ul> <li>Audio Source: In the Audio Source list, you can select LOCAL and HDCVI.</li> </ul>	

Parameter	Description
Compression	<ul> <li>LOCAL: The audio signal is input from Audio input port.</li> <li>HDCVI: The audio signal is input from HDCVI camera.</li> <li>Audio Format: In the Compression list, select a format that you need.</li> </ul>
Step 3 Click Ap	<b>ply</b> to complete the settings.

Click Copy to to copy the settings to other channels.

# 5.5.3 Configuring Snapshot Settings

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > CAMERA > Encode > Snapshot.

The **Snapshot** interface is displayed.

	CAMERA		K 🛞 🛔	. 🗘 🕻	ፆ .⊉⇔	LIVE	🛓 🕒 🗸 👼
	Image	Audio/Video	Snapshot	Encode Enha			
>	Encode	Manual Snapsho	ot 1		▼ /Time		
	Overlay						
	PTZ	Channel –	1				
	Channel Type	Type Size	Schedu				
	Camera List	Quality	352x288 4				
	HDCVI Update	Interval	l sec.				
		Default	Copy to			Apply	Cancel

Figure 5-72

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the snapshot parameters.

Table 5-27

Parameter	Description					
Manual Snapshot	In the Manual Snapshot list, select how many snapshots you want to					
Mariual Shapshot	take each time.					
Channel	In the Channel list, select the channel that you want to configure the					
Channel	settings for.					
	In the Type list, you can select Scheduled, Event, or Face Snapshot					
Туре	as the event type for which you want to take a snapshot.					
	• Scheduled: The snapshot is taken during the scheduled period.					

Parameter	Description				
	• Event: The snapshot is taken when there is an alarm event				
	occurs, such as motion detection event, video loss, and local				
	alarms.				
	• Face Snapshot: The snapshot is taken when the face is				
	detected. The face detection function is support only with the				
	Channel 1.				
Size	In the Size list, select a value for the image. The bigger the value is,				
Size	the better the image will become.				
Quality	Configures the image quality by 6 levels. The higher the level, the				
Quality	better the image will become.				
	Configures or customizes the snapshot frequency. You can select 1				
Interval	second per one snapshot to 7 seconds per one snapshot. The				
	maximum is 3600 seconds per one snapshot.				
Step 3 Click Ap	ply to complete the settings.				

Click Copy to to copy the settings to other channels.

### 5.5.4 Configuring Encode Enhancement

You can enable this function and get more FPS in encode settings (see "5.5.2 Configuring Encode Settings"). In the meantime, you will not be able to use extra screen function (see "5.2.8.1 Configuring Display Settings") and AI functions (see "5.11 AI Function").

Select Main Menu > CAMERA > Encode > Encode Enhancement.

The Encode Enhancement interface is displayed.

Figure 5-73

	RA		<b>-</b>	<b>\$</b> . 🛡	<b>L</b> .	LIVE	
Image	A	udio/Video	Snapshot	Encode Enhanc			
> Encode		Encode Enhar	cement				
Overlay		4K-N					
PTZ							
Channel Ty	/pe						
HDCVI Upd							
		Default				Apply	Back
		Derautt				Apply	Dack

Click the switch to enable it.

When connecting to the new generation 4K cameras, you can enable **4K-N** to switch 4K non-live view to 4K-N live view and encoding.

# 5.5.5 Configuring Overlay Settings

You can configure to display system time and channel name on each channel window in the live view screen.

```
<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > CAMERA > Overlay > Overlay.
```

The **Overlay** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-74

	CAMERA				<b>\$</b> 0	▣	<b>L</b> o	LIVE	L .	-
	Image	Overlay								
>										
	PTZ									
		<b>— — — — —</b>		1000/10						
		Time Title		YYYY MI	M DD					
		🗹 Channel T								
		Default	Copy to					Apply	Ba	ck

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the text overlay parameters.

Table 5-28

Parameter	Description				
Channel	In the <b>Channel</b> list, select the channel that you want to configure the				
Channel	settings for.				
	Select the Time Title check box to display the system time on each				
Time Title	channel window in the live view screen.				
	In the <b>Time Title</b> list, select time display style.				
	Select the Channel Title check box to display the channel name on				
Channel Title	each channel window in the live view screen.				
	In the <b>Channel Title</b> box, enter the name for the selected channel.				
Step 3 Click Apply to complete the settings					

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

Click Copy to to copy the settings to other channels.

# **5.5.6 Configuring Covered Area Settings**

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > CAMERA > Overlay > Privacy Masking. The Privacy Masking interface is displayed.

Figure 5-75

CAMERA		💌 🍪 📥	\$₀ . 🖲	<b>L</b> .	LIVE	
		Privacy Masking				
PTZ						
	F					
		4 3				
			1			
	2					
	Live	🖌 Reco	rd			
	Refresh				Apply	Back

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the covered area parameters.

Table 5-29

Parameter	Description
Channel	In the Channel list, select the channel that you want to configure the
Channel	settings for.
	• Preview: Select the Live check box to apply the configured
Live	covered block to the selected channel window in the live view
LIVE	screen.
	• Record: Select the <b>Record</b> check box to apply the configured
	covered block to the selected channel window during recording.
	To configure covering block, do the following:
	1. Select the Live check box or the Record check box, or select the
Depard	both. The "1, 2, 3, 4" buttons are activated.
Record	2. Click the buttons to select blocks.
	A triangle solid black block is displayed.
	3. Drag the block to the area that you want to cover and adjust the
	size of the block. You can configure total 4 covered blocks.

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

# 5.5.7 Configuring Channel Type

You can configure the channel type as Analog or IP channel.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > CAMERA > Channel Type. The Channel Type interface is displayed.

	CAMERA				۰. 🛡	<b>L</b> .		LIVE	L 🕞 🗸 🔡
	Image				HDCVI	-*			
	Encode	Channel	AUTO	CVI	AHD	CVBS	Other		
	Overlay	1 2							
	PTZ	3 4	<b>Y</b>						
>	Channel Type	5	y y						
	Camera List	7 8							
	HDCVI Update	9 - 16					er it is disabled		
					analog channe			. channet	
								Apply	Back

Figure 5-76

Step 2 Configure the channels.

- Analog Channel: Select the transmission medium such as CVI, AHD, CVBS, and then follow the onscreen instructions to complete the settings.
- IP Channel: You can enable the IP channels by disabling the corresponding analog channels. The Device also provides expanded IP channels for your use, such as the **17–64** channels in Figure 5-76.

#### 

- The 17–64 channels are only for IP camera and the range changes dependent on the model you purchased.
- The channel selection for analog camera or IP camera are in sequence, for example, if you want to select channels for IP camera, you need to select from the last channel number Channel **16** first, which means, you cannot jump to select the channel **15** directly until you have selected the channel **16**.

Step 3 Click Apply and follow the onscreen instructions to complete the settings.

## 5.5.8 Upgrading Coaxial Camera

#### Step 1 Select Main Menu > CAMERA > HDVCI Update.

The **HDVCI Update** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-77

CAMERA		🍪 🚔 🍫 🛡		💄 🕒 🗸 📖
lmage Encode	Please selec			owse
Overlay	Device(0/0)			
PTZ	Channel	Progress	System Version	
Channel Type				
Camera List				
> HDCVI Update				
			Updat	e

Step 2 Click Browse.

The Browse interface is displayed.

<u>Step 3</u> Select the upgrade file and then click **OK**.

The HDVCI Update interface is displayed.

You need to insert the USB storage device that contains the upgrading files.

- <u>Step 4</u> Select the check box of the channel that you want to upgrade.
- Step 5 Click Update.

If the upgrading is successful, the system pops up a message indicating the upgrading is completed.

# 5.6 Configuring Remote Devices

### 5.6.1 Adding Remote Devices

This function is available after you have configured the channel type as IP channel as described in previous section, see "5.5.7 Configuring Channel Type."

You can add remote devices by adding the IP address.

Select Main Menu > CAMERA > Camera List > Add Camera, the Add Camera interface is displayed.

Figure 5-78

							-
CAMERA		<b>C</b>	🚔 🌣	• 🛡	<b>L</b> o	LIVE	💄 🗗 🗸 🗒
Image	Add Camera		Fir		Update		
Encode	IP Address			Search	Uninitialized	1	Initialize
Overlay	0	Modify	Live	Sta	tus IP Address		Manufact
PTZ							
Channel Type							
<ul> <li>Camera List</li> </ul>							
HDCVI Update							
	Search Devi	ce Add	Manual	Add M	odify IP	Filter Nor	ie 🔻
	Added Devid	e					
	Channel	Modify	Delete	Status	IP Address	Port	Device Na
	D8				172.12.1.122	37777	camera14
						Import	Export
	Remaining E	Bandwidt	0.26Mbps/5	5.50Mbps		mport	

Table 5-30

Parameter	Description				
Uninitialized	Enable the Uninitialized function, the uninitialized devices out of the				
Uninitialized	searched devices are displayed in the searched device list.				
Initialize	Select the uninitialized device from the uninitialized device list, and				
millanze	the click Initialize to start initializing device.				
	In the Filter list, select the remote device type that you want to display				
	in the searched device list.				
	None: Display all types of devices.				
Filter	IPC: Display the front-end devices.				
	• DVR: Display all storage devices such as NVR, DVR and HCVR.				
	• OTHER: Display the devices that do not belong to IPC or DVR				
	type.				
Searched Device	Displays the searched devices. You can view the device information				
List	such as status, IP address.				
	Click Search, the searched devices display in the searched device				
	list.				
	To adjust the display sequence, in the title line, you can click the IP				
Search	address, Type or Device Name text. For example, click the IP address				
	text, the sequence icon <sup>IP Address</sup> is displayed.				
	"*" is displayed next to the added device.				
Add	In the Searched Device List area, select the device that you want to				
Add	add.				

Parameter	Description
	Add the device by manually configuring settings such as IP address,
Manual Add	channel selection. For details, see "5.6.1.3 Adding Remote Devices
	Manually."
Added Device	Displays the added devices. You can edit and delete the device, and
List	view the device information.
Delete	Select the check box of the added device, and then click Delete to
Delete	delete the added device.
Import	Select the searched devices and then click Import to import the
Import	devices in batches.
Export	Select the added devices and then click <b>Export</b> . The exported
Export	devices information is saved into the USB storage device.

### 5.6.1.1 Initializing Remote Devices

You can reset the password and IP address of the remote devices through initializing. <u>Step 1</u> Click **Search Device**.

The devices found are displayed in the table.

CAMERA		<b>-</b>	🚔 🌣	🛡 🚣		LIVE	💄 🕒 🗸 🖳
	Add Camera				Update		
	IP Address			earch			Initialize
	105	Modify	Live	Status	IP Address 🔺		Manufact 🔺
		/ Niodily		✓	n 7 (dd) (33 –		Private =
D/A Conversion		ľ					
> Camera List		ľ					
		<i>▶</i>	LIVE				Private 🔻
	Search Devic Added Devic Channel		Manual Ad Delete S	d Modify I Status IP Ado		Filter None Port	▼ Device Nan
						Import	Export

Figure 5-79

<u>Step 2</u> Enable the Initialized function. The uninitialized devices are displayed.

				<b>•</b> *			LIVE	
	CAMERA			🚔 🌣	▣ ≗₀		LIVE	∣≚ ⊍∙∷∺
		Add Camera				Update		
		IP Address			Search			Initialize
			Modify	Live	Status ✓	IP Address		Manufactur Private
>								
		Search Devic	e Add	Manual Ad	id Modify I	P F	ilter None	
		Added Device	<u>,</u>					
		Channel	Modify	Delete	Status IP Ado	iress Port		Device Nan
							Import	Export
				0.00Mbps/5.50	)Mbps			

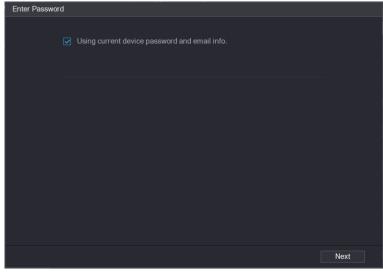
Figure 5-80

Step 3 Select the uninitialized device that you want to initialize.

Step 4 Click Initialize.

The Enter Password interface is displayed.

Figure 5-81



<u>Step 5</u> Configure the password and email information.

If you select the **Using current device password and email info** check box, the remote device automatically uses the current password and email information, so you do not need to set the password and email address again and can go to Step 6.

 Clear the Using current device password and email info check box. The password setting interface is displayed.

Figure 5-82

Enter Passwo	ord	
	Using current de	vice password and email info.
	User	admin
	Password	
		Use a password that has 8 to 32 characters, it can be a combination of letter(s), number(s) and symbol(s) with at least two kinds of them.(please do not use special symbols like ' "; :
	Confirm Password	
		Next

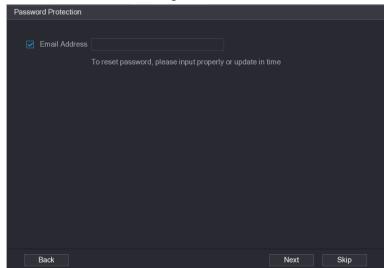
2) Configure the settings for the password setting parameters.

Table	5-31
1 0010	001

Parameter	Description
User	The default is admin.
Password	The new password can be set from 8 characters through 32 characters and contains at least two types from number, letter and
Confirm Password	special characters (excluding"", """, ";", ":" and "&"). Please enter a strong password according to the password strength bar indication.

- 3) Click Next.
  - The **Password Protection** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-83



Select the Email Address box and enter the email address that you want to reserve for password reset in the future.

If you do not want to set the reserved email address, click Skip.

Step 6 Click Next.

The **NETWORK** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-84

NETWORK		
Checked Device No.: 1		
STATIC		
IP Address	101,100,1,.00	Incremental Value 1
Subnet Mask	(86 . 84 . 86 . 4	
Default Gateway	10. 10. Lat. Lat. Lat.	
1 IP Address		
1 199 199 1.19		
Back		Next Skip

<u>Step 7</u> Configure the IP address.

- Select the **DHCP** check box, you do not need to enter the IP address information, because the system will allocate one IP address to the remote device.
- Select the **STATIC** check box, you need to enter the IP address, subnet mast, default gateway, and incremental value. The system will allocate the IP address to the remote devices by progressively increasing the last part of the IP address when initializing devices in batches.

When configuring IP address for multiple remote devices which were not in the same network segment, these remote devices will belong to the same network segment after configuration.

#### Step 8 Click Next.

The initializing is started. After the process is completed, see Figure 5-85.

	Figure 5-85						
Dev	Device Initialization						
De	vice	Initialization Finished					
	1	IP Address	Serial No.	Results			
			000000000000000000000000000000000000000				
					Finished		

<u>Step 9</u> Click **Finished** to complete the settings.

### 5.6.1.2 Adding Remote Devices Automatically

Step 1 On the Registration interface, click Device Search The devices found are displayed.

					F	igure	5-86						
	CAMERA				K 🛞	_	<b>\$</b> _0 (	ע בּ			E .	L 🕂	90 90
	Image	Add (	Camera						Update				
		I	P Addre	ss 🔻			Search				Ir	nitialize	
				N	lodify	Live		Status	IP Address 🔺		M	lanufact	
>	Camera List												
					✓	LIVE							
			Added Do		Madifi	Dalata	Status	ID Add	lroad	Port		)orioo N	lan
			Channe	əl	Modify	Delete	Status			Port		Device N	
			•										
										Import		Export	

<u>Step 2</u> Select the check box of the device. Step 3 Click Add.

The device is added into the **Added Device** area.

- You can also double-click the device to add it into the Added Device area.
- You can add devices in batches.

### 5.6.1.3 Adding Remote Devices Manually

Step 1 On the Add Camera interface, click Manual Add.

The Manual Add interface is displayed.

Figure 5-87					
Manual Add					
Channel	D8 -				
Manufacturer	ONVIF -				
IP Address	1283 B28 B 8				
RTSP Port	Self-adaptive 🔹				
HTTP Port	80				
Username	admin				
Password		Connect			
Total Channels		Setting			
Remote CH No.	D1 -				
Decode Strategy	General 🔻				
Encryption					
🗿 Auto 🔵 Te	CP 🔿 UDP 🔿 MU	LTICAST			
			OK	Cancel	

Step 2 Configure the settings for the manual adding device parameters.

Table	5-32
-------	------

Parameter	Description
Channel	In the Channel list, select the channel that you want use on the
Channel	Device to connect the remote device.
Manufacturer	In the Manufacturer list, select the manufacturer of the remote
Manulacturer	device.
	In the IP Address box, enter the IP address of remote device.
IP Address	
	The default is 192.168.0.0 which the system cannot connect to.
RTSP Port	The default value setting is 554. You can enter the value according to
KISF FUIL	your actual situation.
	The default value setting is 80. You can enter the value according to
HTTP Port	your actual situation.
	If you enter other value, for example, 70, and then you should enter
	70 after the IP address when logging in the Device by browser.
TCP Port	The default value setting is 37777. You can enter the value according
	to your actual situation.
User Name	Enter the user name of the remote device.

Parameter	Description
Password	Enter the password of the user for the remote device.
Remote CH No.	Enter the remote channel number of the remote device that you want
Remote CITINO.	to add.
Decoder Strategy	In the Decoder Strategy list, select Default, Realtime, or Fluent.
	• If the remote device is added through private protocol, the default type is <b>TCP</b> .
Protocol Type	• If the remote device is added through ONVIF protocol, the system
	supports Auto, TCP, UDP, or MULTICAST.
	• If the remote device is added through other manufacturers, the
	system supports <b>TCP</b> and <b>UDP</b> .
	If the remote device is added through ONVIF protocol, enabling the
	Encryption check box will provide encryption protection to the data
En en milien	being transmitted.
Encryption	
	To use this function, the HTTPS function should be enabled for the
	remote IP camera.
Step 3 Click OK	to save the settings.

- Only one device can be added manually at one time.
- Indicates successful connection and I indicates connection failed.

### 5.6.1.4 Modifying or Deleting Remote Devices

You can modify and delete the added devices.

• To modify the remote devices, do the following:

Step 1 Click or double-click a device.

The **Modify** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-88

Modify				
Channel	D8 -			
Manufacturer	Private -			
IP Address				
TCP Port				
Username	admin			
Password	•••••	Connect		
Total Channels				
Remote CH No.	D1 -			
Decode Strategy	General -			
			OK	Cancel

<u>Step 2</u> In the **Channel** list, select the channel that you want to modify settings for. <u>Step 3</u> Click **OK** to save the settings.

- To delete one or more added devices, do the following:
  - $\diamond$  Click  $\square$  to delete one device.
  - Select the check box of the devices that you want to delete, and then click **Delete**.

## 5.6.1.5 Modifying IP Address

You can modify a single IP address or multiple IP addresses of remote devices at one time.

You can only modify the IP address of initialized cameras.

- To modify a single IP address, do the following:
- Step 1 In the Searched Device list area, click for the device that you want to modify IP.

The Modify IP interface is displayed.

Figure 5-89

Modify IP		
Selected Device Quantity: 1		
⊖ DHCP		ame admin
Subnet Mask		
Default Gateway		
1 SN IP	Address	
OK Cancel		

- <u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for IP address, subnet mask, default gateway, user name, and password.
- Step 3 Click **OK** to save the settings.
- To modify IP address in batches, do the following:
- <u>Step 1</u> In the Searched Device list area, select the devices that you want to modify IP address in batches.
- Step 2 Click

The **Modify IP** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-90

Modify IP		
Selected Device Quantity: 4		
O DHCP		admin
• Static		
IP Address	[	Incremental Value 1
Subnet Mask		
Default Gateway		
4 SN	IP Address	
1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1		
2		
3		
4		
OK Cancel		

<u>Step 3</u> Set incremental value.

 $\square$ 

The system will add the incremental value to the fourth segment of IP addresses of selected devices.

- <u>Step 4</u> Configure the settings for start IP address (the IP address is allocated in sequence), subnet mask, default gateway, user name, and password.
- <u>Step 5</u> Click **OK** to save the settings.

### 5.6.1.6 Exporting IP Address

You can export the added IP address to the USB storage device.

The exported information is saved in .csv file, which includes IP address, port number, channel number, manufacturer, user name, and password.

- <u>Step 1</u> Insert the USB storage device to the USB port of the Device.
- Step 2 Click Export.

The **Browse** interface is displayed.

		-			
owse					
Device Name	sdb1(USB USB)		Refresh Form	nat	
	7.51 GB				
	0.00 KB				
Name		Size	Туре	Delete	•
🗅 cx				ā	
FOUND.000				ā	
				亩	
🛅 System Volume Info	rmation			ā	
				<b></b>	
🛅 snapPic				亩	
Backup Encryption					
New Folder				OK B	ack

Figure 5-91

<u>Step 3</u> Configure the save path.

<u>Step 4</u> Click **OK** to save the settings.

A pop-up message indicating "Successfully exported" is displayed.

Step 5 Click OK.

When exporting IP address, the **Backup Encryption** check box is selected by default. The file information includes IP address, port, channel number, manufacturer, user name, and password.

- If you select the **Backup Encryption** check box, the file format is .backup.
- If you clear the **Backup Encryption** check box, the file format is .csv. In this case, there might be a risk of data leakage.

### 5.6.1.7 Importing IP Address

You can add remote devices by importing IP address information.

<u>Step 1</u> Insert the USB storage device to the USB port of the Device.

#### Step 2 Click Import.

The **Browse** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-92							
Browse							
Device Name	sdb1(USB USB)		Refresh Form	nat			
	7.51 GB						
	0.00 KB						
Address							
Name		Size	Туре	Delete	<b>^</b>		
cx				亩			
🗅 FOUND.000				<b> </b>	=		
				<b> </b>			
📑 System Volume Infor				<b> </b>			
				亩			
📄 snapPic				ā			
o ga anting				ā			
				ā	-		
New Folder				OK B	ack		

Step 3 Select the file that you want to import.

<u>Step 4</u> Click **OK** to start importing.

After importing is completed, a pop-up message indicating "The import succeeded" is displayed.

If the IP address that you want to import already exists in the Device, the system will pop up a message to ask you whether to overwrite the existing content.

- Click OK to replace the existing one.
- Click Cancel to add it as a separate device in the Added Device area.



- You can edit the exported .csv file and be cautious not to change the file format; otherwise the file cannot be imported as it will be judged as invalid.
- The language of .csv file must match the Device language.
- The import and export through customized protocol is not supported.

### 5.6.2 Managing Remote Devices

You can view the status of remote devices and upgrade.

### 5.6.2.1 Viewing Status

You can view the device information such as connection status, IP address, motion detection, video loss detection, camera name, and manufacturer.

Select Main Menu > CAMERA > Camera List > Status, the Status interface is displayed.

Fio	ure	5-93
i ig	Juic	0.00

	CAMERA		<b>-</b>	🛋 🌣 🛡 🛽	-¢	LIVE 💄 🗗 🖉
			Status	Firmware		
		Channel	IP Address	Manufacturer Type		System Version
>						
		Refresh				

### 5.6.2.2 Viewing Firmware Information

You can view the device firmware information such as channel number, IP address, manufacturer, system version, video input, audio input, and alarm in.

Select Main Menu > CAMERA > Camera List > Firmware, the Firmware interface is displayed.

CAMERA		<b>S</b>	🚔 🍫 🛡 .	<b>L</b> .	
Image			Firmware		
Encode	Channel	IP Address	Manufacturer Type		System Version
Overlay					
PTZ					
D/A Conversion					
> Camera List					
HDCVI Update					
	Refresh				

Figure 5-94

### 5.6.2.3 Upgrading Remote Devices

#### Step 1 Select Main Menu > CAMERA > Camera List > Update.

The **Update** interface is displayed.

CAMERA		<b>-</b> 🛞	🚔 🍫 🖲	┚ ≗₀	LIVE 💄 🗟 🛪 🛱
				Update	
					None 🔻
	Channel		IP Address	System Version	
				File Update Manual Ch	eck Online Update

Figure 5-95

Step 2 Upgrade the device.

- File Update
- 1) Insert a USB storage device containing the upgrade files into the USB port of the Device.
- 2) Select the devices that you want to upgrade.
- Click File Update. The File Update interface is displayed.
- 4) Select the upgrading files and click **Apply**.
- Online Update
- Click Detect or select the check box the device that you want to upgrade and click Manual Check.

The system starts detecting if there is a new version on the online server.

- 2) Select the check box of all the devices that have new version.
- 3) Click **Online Update**.

- The system will pop up a message to indicate if the upgrading is successful.
- You can use the Type list to filter the devices so that you can find the devices quickly.

# **5.7 Configuring Record Settings**

You can record video manually or automatically and configure the recording settings to main stream and sub stream respectively.

# 5.7.1 Enabling Record Control



- Manual recording operation requires the user have the permission to access STORAGE settings.
- Check to ensure the HDD installed in the Device has been formatted properly.

To enter the record control interface, do the following:

<u>Step 1</u> Right-click on the live view screen, the shortcut menu is displayed. On the shortcut menu, select **Manual Control > Record Control**.

The Record Mode interface is displayed.

Figure 5-96

Record Mode				
Main Stream	All			
Auto				
Manual				
Off				
Sub Stream				
Auto				
Manual				
Off				
Snapshot				
On				
Off				
			Apply	Back

Step 2 Configure the settings for the record control parameters.

Table 5-33

Parameter	Description				
Channel	Displays all the analog channels and the connected digital channels.				
Channel	You can select a single channel or select All.				
Main Stream/Sub Stream	<ul> <li>Auto: Automatically record according to the record type and recording time as configured in the recording schedule.</li> <li>Manual: Keep general recording for 24 hours for the selected channel.</li> <li>Stop: Do not record.</li> </ul>				
Snapshot	Enable or disable the scheduled snapshot for the corresponding channels.				

Step 3 Click Apply.

# 5.7.2 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule

You need to configure the storage schedule for the recorded video so that the recorded video can be saved. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule."

# **5.8 Configuring Snapshot Settings**

# 5.8.1 Configuring Snapshot Trigger

The snapshot is divided into scheduled snapshot, event triggered snapshot, and face detection triggered snapshot. When the both are enabled, the event triggered snapshot has the priority.

- If there is no alarm event, the system performs scheduled snapshot.
- If there is any alarm event, the system performs event triggered snapshot.

#### 5.8.1.1 Configuring Scheduled Snapshot

- Step 1 Right-click on the live view screen, the shortcut menu is displayed.
- <u>Step 2</u> On the shortcut menu, select **Manual Control > Record Control**. The **Record Mode** interface is displayed.
- Step 3 In the **Snapshot** area, enable the snapshot for the channels if needed.

		i igui e e	-
ord Mode			
Main Stream	All		
Auto			
Manual			
Off			
Sub Stream			
Manual			
Off			
Snapshot			
On	$\bigcirc$		
Off			
			Apply

Figure 5-97

#### <u>Step 4</u> Select Main Menu > CAMERA > Encode > Snapshot. The Snapshot interface is displayed.

<u>Step 5</u> In the **Type** list, select **Scheduled**, and then configure other parameters.

Figure 5-98

Audio/Video		Encode Enhar	າc	
Manual Snapsho				/Time
Channel				
Туре	Scheduled		•	
Size	352x288(C	IF)	•	-
Quality				
Interval	1 sec.			

<u>Step 6</u> Click **Apply** to save the settings.

- If you have configured the snapshot schedule, the configuration has been completed.
- If you have not configured the snapshot schedule, see "5.1.4.10 Configuring Snapshot Storage Schedule."

### 5.8.1.2 Configuring Event Triggered Snapshot

- <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > CAMERA > Encode > Snapshot. The Snapshot interface is displayed.
- <u>Step 2</u> In the **Type** list, select **Event**, and then configure other parameters.

			Figure	5-99		
1	Audio/Video	Snap	shot	Encode	e Enhanc	
	Manual Snapshot		1			/Time
	Channel		1			
	Туре		Event		•	
	Size		352x288	B(CIF)	•	-
	Quality		4			
	Interval		1 sec.			

<u>Step 3</u> Select **Main Menu > ALARM > Video Detection**, and select the event type to configure, for example, select the **Motion Detection** tab.

			Figu	re 5-100				
	🔔 ALARM	ጰ 💄	<u>,</u>	$\bigcirc$ $\bigcirc$	🗘 📮 🎧		LIVE	🕈 🕈 👼
		Motion Detection						
						Settin	g	
>			Setting		Anti-Dither Post-Alarm			
			Repor		Send Email			
	Disarming		ture Storage					
							Setting	
			ОК	Cancel				
		Default	Copy to				Apply I	Back

<u>Step 4</u> Click **Setting** next to **Picture Storage** check box and select the corresponding channel <u>Step 5</u> Click **Apply**.

# 5.8.2 Configuring Snapshot Storage Schedule

You need to configure the storage schedule for the snapshot so that the snapshot can be saved. For details, see "5.1.4.10 Configuring Snapshot Storage Schedule."

## 5.8.3 Backing up Snapshots to FTP

Step 1 Select Main Menu > STORAGE > FTP.

The **FTP** interface is displayed.

STORAGE		) 🚔 🎝 🛡	<b>L</b> \$		
Rec Estimate					
		Sat			
		00:00 - 24:00			
		00:00 - 24:00			
	Snapshot Picture Upload Interval				
	Channel	Setting			
		Setting			
	Default Test			A	pply Back

Figure 5-101

<u>Step 2</u> Enable the FTP function and configure the parameters. For details, see "5.18.9 Configuring FTP Storage Settings." The snapshots will be uploaded to FTP for backup.

# 5.9 Playing Back Video

# 5.9.1 Enabling Record Control



- Manual recording operation requires the user have the permission to access STORAGE settings.
- Check to ensure the HDD installed in the Device has been formatted properly.

To enter the record control interface, do the following:

<u>Step 1</u> Right-click on the live view screen, the shortcut menu is displayed. On the shortcut menu, select **Manual Control > Record Mode**. The **Record Mode** interface is displayed.

 Record Mode

 Main Stream
 All
 1
 2
 3
 4
 5
 6
 7
 8

 Auto
 Image: Constrained and the second and

Figure 5-102

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the record control parameters.

Table 5-34

Parameter	Description				
Channel	Displays all the analog channels and the connected digital channels.				
Channel	You can select a single channel or select All.				
Main Stream/Sub Stream	<ul> <li>Auto: Automatically record according to the record type and recording time as configured in the recording schedule.</li> <li>Manual: Keep general recording for 24 hours for the selected channel.</li> <li>Stop: Do not record.</li> </ul>				
Snapshot	Enable or disable the scheduled snapshot for the corresponding channels.				

## 5.9.2 Instant Playback

You can use the instant playback function to play back the previous five minutes to sixty minutes of the recorded video in any channel. For details about instant playback function, see "5.2.2.1 Instant Playback."

# 5.9.3 Main Interface of Video Playback

You can search for and play back the recorded video saved on the Device.

Select Main Menu > Search, the video search interface is displayed.

Figure 5-103

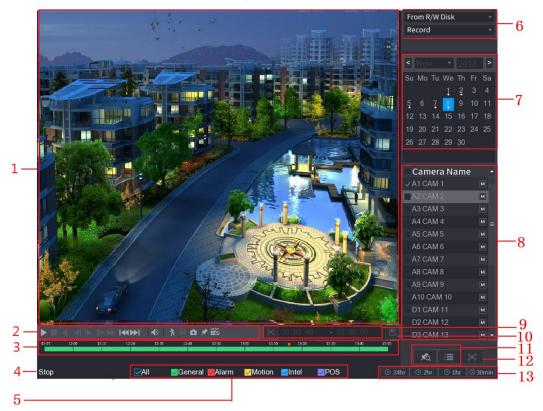


Table 5-35

No.	Function	Description				
1	Display Window	Display the searched recorded video or picture. Supports simultaneously playing in single-channel, 4-channel, 9-channel, and 16-channel. When playing back in a single channel, click and hold to select the area that you want to enlarge. The area is enlarged after the left mouse button is released. To exit the enlarged status, right-click on				
		the image.				
2	Playback	Playback control buttons. For details about the control buttons, see				
2	Controls Bar	"5.9.3.1 Introducing Playback Controls."				

No.	Function	Description		
3	Time Bar	<ul> <li>Display the type and time period of the current recorded video.</li> <li>In the 4-channel layout, there are four time bars are displayed; in the other view layouts, only one time bar is displayed.</li> <li>Click on the colored area to start playback from a certain time.</li> <li>In the situation when you are configuring the settings, rotate the wheel button on the time bar, the time bar is zooming in from 0. In the situation when playback is ongoing, rotate the wheel button on the time bar, the time bar is zooming from the time point where the playback is located.</li> <li>Time bar colors: Green indicates general type; Red indicates external alarm; Yellow indicates motion detection; Blue indicates intelligent events; Purple indicates POS events.</li> <li>For some models, when you are clicking on the blank area in the time bar, the system automatically jumps to the next time point where there is a recorded video located.</li> <li>Click and hold the time bar, and the mouse pointer shall change to a hand icon, and then you can drag to view the playback of the target time.</li> <li>You can drag the vertical orange line on the time bar to rapidly view the playback in iframe format.</li> <li>When playing back video in one channel mode, you can move mouse pointer to time bar to display thumbnail pictures for the video of target time.</li> <li>When playing back video, you can select other channels as needed. The time bar of newly added channels. The type and time period of newly added channels are the same with early base channels.</li> </ul>		
4	Play Status	Includes two playback status: <b>Play</b> and <b>Stop</b> .		
5	Record type	Select the check box to define the recording type to search for.		
6	Search type	Select the content to play back: <b>Record</b> , <b>Picture</b> , <b>Subperiod</b> . For details about the selecting search type, see "5.9.3.2 Selecting Search Type."		
7	Calendar	Click the date that you want to search, the time bar displays the corresponding record. The dates with record or snapshot have a small solid circle under the date.		

No.	Function	Description		
8	View Layout and Channel Selection	<ul> <li>In the Camera Name list, select the channel(s) that you want to play back.</li> <li>The window split is decided by how you select the channel(s). For example, if you select one channel, the playback is displayed in the single-channel view; if you select two to four channels, the playback is displayed in the four-channel view. The maximum is eight channels.</li> <li>Click to switch the streams. Indicates main stream, and indicates sub stream.</li> </ul>		
9	Video Splice	Splice a section of recorded video and save it. For details about splicing a recorded video, see "5.9.3.3 Clipping Recorded Video."		
10	Backup	Back up the recorded video files. For details, see "5.9.3.4 Backing up Recorded Video."		
11	List Display	<ul> <li>This area includes Tag List and File List.</li> <li>Click the Tag List button, the marked recorded video list is displayed. Double-click the file to start playing.</li> <li>Click the File List button, the searched recorded video list is displayed. You can lock the files. For details, see "5.9.9 Using the File List."</li> </ul>		
12	Full Screen	Click to display in full screen. In the full screen mode, point to the bottom of the screen, the time bar is displayed. Right-click on the screen to exit full screen mode.		
13	Time Bar Unit	You can select 24hr, 2hr, 1hr, or 30min as the unit of time bar. The time bar display changes with the setting.		

### 5.9.3.1 Introducing Playback Controls Bar

You can perform the operations such as control the speed of playback, add mark, and take snapshots through the playback controls bar.





The play backward function and playback speed are dependent on the product version. The actual product shall govern. You can also contact the technical support to consult the hardware version information.

Table 5-36

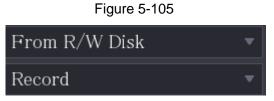
lcon	Function
	Play/Pause.
<b>, , , ,</b>	During playing back, you can switch between play and pause.
	Stop.
-	During playing back, you can click the <b>Stop</b> button to stop playback.
	Play Backward.
	• During playing back, click the <b>Play Backward</b> button to backward
<b>◀</b> , Ⅱ	play the recorded video, the button switches to 🛄; click 💵 to
	stop playing backward.
	During playing back, click to start playing forward.
	Previous Frame/Next Frame.
	• When the playback is paused, click I or click to play
	single-frame recorded video.
	• When playing back single-frame recorded video, click <b>b</b> to
	start playing forward.
	Slow Playback.
	During playing back, click to set the speed of slow playback
	as SlowX1/2, SlowX1/4, SlowX1/8, or SlowX1/16.
	• During fast playback, click <b>L</b> to slow down the speed of fast
	playback.
	Fast Playback.
	• During playing back, click by to set the speed of fast playback
	as FastX2, FastX4, FastX8, or FastX16.
	During slow playback, click to speed up slow playback.
	Previous Day/Next Day.
<b> </b> ←, ▶>	Click or click to play the previous day or next day of the
	current recorded video.
-12	
<b>1</b> 2	Adjust volume of playback.
*	Enable smart search function. For details about using the smart
	search, see "5.9.4 Smart Search."
	Add filter criteria of smart search. You can select Human, Vehicle, or
- Çin	uncheck. For details about using the smart search, see "5.9.4 Smart
	Search."

lcon	Function
<b>D</b>	In the full screen mode, click to take a snapshot and save into the USB storage device or mobile HDD.
*	Add Mark for the recorded view. For details about adding mark, see "5.9.6 Marking and Playing Back Video."
POS ::=	Show or hide POS information. During single-channel playback, click to show or hide POS information on the screen.
⇔₀	During playback, click this icon to display or hide AI rulers. For more details, see "5.9.5 Showing AI Rule during Playback."
	Show playback video in full screen.

### 5.9.3.2 Selecting Search Type

You can search the recorded videos, splice, or snapshots from HDD or external storage device.

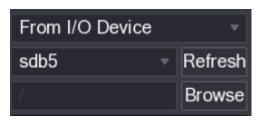
• From R/W Disk: Recorded videos or snapshots playback from HDD of the Device.



• From I/O Device: Recorded videos playback from external storage device. Click Browse, select the save path of recorded video file that you want to play.

Double-click the video file or click both to start playing.

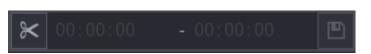
Figure 5-106



### 5.9.3.3 Clipping Recorded Video

During playback, clip sections of recorded video and save to the USB storage device. For the video clip interface, see Figure 5-107.

Figure 5-107



<u>Step 1</u> Select a recorded video that you want to play.

• Click to start playing from the beginning.

• Double-click anywhere in the time bar colored area to start playback.

Step 2 Click on the time bar to select the start time, and then click K to start clipping.

Step 3 Click on the time bar to select the end time, and then click K to stop clipping.

Step 4 Click

The **BACKUP** dialog box is displayed. You can back up the files.

 $\square$ 

- You can clip the video of a single-channel or multiple channels.
- Maximum 1024 files can be backed up at one time.
- The files that are selected in the File List cannot be clipped.

### 5.9.3.4 Backing up Recorded Video

You can back up the recorded video file or splice video file into the USB storage device.

<u>Step 1</u> Select the recorded video file that you want to back up. You can select the following two types of files:

- Recorded video file: Click I, the **File List** area is displayed. Select the file(s) that you want to back up.
- Splice video file. For details about splicing video file, see "5.9.3.3 Clipping Recorded Video."

Step 2 Click

The **BACKUP** dialog box is displayed.

Figure 5-108

BACK	ÜΡ										
	1	Name(Type)			Free	Free Space/Total Space			Device Status		
		√ sd	lb5(USE	3 DISK)	15.6	60 GB/15.60 G	В	Ready			
	2	√ CI	Н Туре	Start Tim	e	End Time	Siz	e(KB)			
		$\checkmark$	1 R	17-11-08 0 <sup>-</sup>	1:00:00	17-11-08 02	2:00:00	1847872			
	2		1 R	17-11-08 02	2:00:00	17-11-08 03	3:00:00	1847632			
	Space I	Requir	ed / Sp	ace Remaini	ng:3.52	GB/15.60 GB	Bac	kup	Clear		



 $\square$ 

If you do not want to back the file, clear the check box.

### 5.9.4 Smart Search

During playback, you can analyze a certain area to find if there was any motion detection event occurred. The system will display the images with motion events of the recorded video.  $\square$ 

Not all models support this function.

To use the Smart Search function, you need to enable the motion detection for the channel by selecting Main Menu > ALARM > Video Detection > Motion Detection.

To use the Smart Search function, do the following:

<u>Step 1</u> Select **Main Menu > SEARCH**, the video search interface is displayed.

Step 2 In the Camera Name list, select the channel(s) that you want to play.

Step <u>3</u> Click or double-click anywhere in the time bar colored area to start playback.

Step 4 Click

The grid is displayed on the screen.

 $\square$ 

- Only single-channel supports smart search. •
- If multi-channels are selected, double-click on the channel window to display this channel only on the screen, and then you can start using smart search function.

<u>Step 5</u> Drag the pointer to select the searching area.

 $\square$ 

The grid area supports 22×18(PAL) and 22×15(NTSC).

Step 6 Click to add filter criteria. You can check **Human** box, **Vehicle** box, or uncheck.

- Human: Display the motion alarm of human during selected time and searching area.
- Vehicle: Display the motion alarm of vehicle during selected time and searching • area.
- Unchecking: Display the general motion alarm which includes both human and vehicle, during selected time and searching area.

Step 7 Click

The screen starts playing back the motional splices of recorded video for the selected searching area.

Step 8 Click to exit the smart searching while playback.

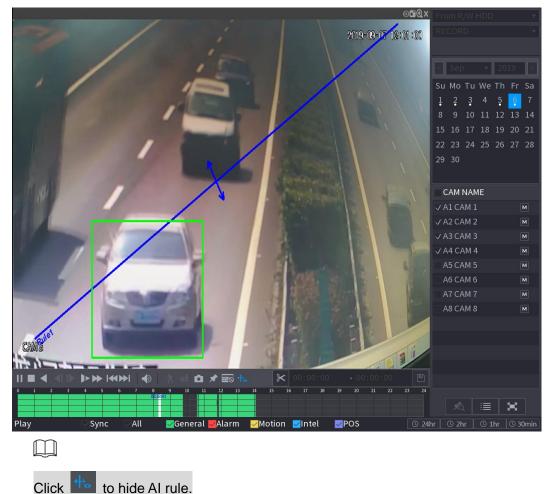
## 5.9.5 Showing AI Rule during Playback

To use the AI rule showing function, do the following:

- <u>Step 1</u> Select **Main Menu > SEARCH**, the video search interface is displayed.
- Step 2 In the Camera Name list, select the channel(s) that you want to play.

Step 3 Click or double-click anywhere in the time bar colored area to start playback.

You can see the AI rule during playback. This function is enabled by default. Figure 5-109



## 5.9.6 Marking and Playing Back Video

You can mark the recording for somewhere important. Then you can easily find the marked recording by searching time and mark name.

#### Marking a Video

- <u>Step 1</u> Select **Main Menu > SEARCH**, the video search interface is displayed.
- Step 2 In the playback mode, click

The Add Tag dialog box is displayed.

Figure 5-110

Add Tag	
Tag Time	
Tag Name	
Default	OK Back

Step 3 In the Tag Name box, enter a name.

Step 4 Click OK.

This marked video file displays in the Tag List.

### Playing Back Marked Video

This function is supported on single-channel playback. <u>Step 1</u> In the **Camera Name** list, select one channel.

Step 2 Click



The Mark List interface is displayed.

Figure 5-111						
00 : 00 : 00	Q					
1						
Tag Time Name						
<b>11:29:14</b> uuuu						
11:43:55 errt						
Tag Name						
Interval Before Tag						
0	sec.					
*	5					

Step 3 Double-click the file that you want to play back.

To search the marked video by time, in the SEARCH box on the top of the interface,

enter the time, and then click Q.

Playing Back Time before the Tag

You can configure to play N seconds of the tagged video before the tagged time. Step 1 In the Tag Name box, enter the name of a tagged video.

Step 2 In the Interval Before Tag box, enter N seconds.

Step 3 Click



The playback starts from N seconds before the tagged time.

If there is N seconds exist before the marked time, the playback starts from N seconds before the tagged time. If there is not, it plays back as much as there is.

Managing Tagged Video

On the **Tag List** interface, click **I** , the **Tag Management** interface is displayed.

Tag Management		
Channel	8 •	
Start Time	2020-01-04 00:00:00	
End Time	2020-01-05 00:00:00	Search
2 CH	Tag Time	Tag Name
	2020-01-04 11:29:14	
	2020-01-04 11:43:55	errt
Delete		Cancel

Figure 5-112

- Be default, it manages all the tagged videos of the selected channel.
- To search the tagged video, select channel number from the Channel list, enter time in Start Time box and End Time box, and then click Search.
- All the tagged videos display in time order.
- To modify the name of tagged video, double-click a tagged video, the Modify Tag dialog box is displayed.
- To delete the marked video, select the tagged video, and then click **Delete**.

After opening the **Tag Management** interface, the playback will pause until exiting this interface. If the marked video that was in playing back is deleted, the playback will start from the first tagged video in the Tag List.

# 5.9.7 Playing Back Snapshots

You can search and play back the snapshots.

- <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > SEARCH, the video search interface is displayed.
- <u>Step 2</u> In the **Search Type** list, select **Picture**.
- <u>Step 3</u> In the **Channel** list, select a channel number.
- <u>Step 4</u> In the **Calendar** area, select a date.

Step 5 Click

The system starts playing snapshots according to the configured intervals.

# 5.9.8 Playing Back Splices

You can clip the recorded video files into splices and then play back at the same time to save your time.

Not all models support this function.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > SEARCH, the video search interface is displayed.

<u>Step 2</u> In the **Search Type** list, select **Subperiod**; In the Split Mode list, select **4**, **9**, or **16**. Figure 5-113

r igure e r re	
From R/W Disk	
Subperiod	•
4	•

Step 3 In the Calendar area, select a date.

<u>Step 4</u> In the **Camera Name** list, select a channel.

Ш

Only single-channel supports this function.

Step 5 Start playing back splices.

- Click , the playback starts from the beginning.
- Double-click anywhere on the time bar, the playback starts from where you click. Figure 5-114



Every recorded video file must be at least five minutes. If a recorded video file is less than 20 minutes but still choose to split into four windows, the system will automatically adjust the windows quantity to ensure every splice is more than five minutes, and in this case it is possible that there are no images are displaying in some windows.

# 5.9.9 Using the File List

You can view all the recorded videos within a certain period from any channel in the **File List**. <u>Step 1</u> Select **Main Menu > VIDEO**, the video search interface is displayed. Step 2 Select a channel(s).

Step 3 Click

The File List interface is displayed.

Figure 5-115						
00:	00	:	00	Q		
1						
Star	t Tin	ne	Туре		•	
00:0	0:04	R				
01:0	0:04	R				
02:0	0:04	R				
03:0	0:04	R				
04:0	0:04	R				
05:0	0:04	R				
06:0	0:04	R			≡	
07:0	0:04	R				
08:0	0:04	R				
09:0	0:04	R				
09:4	3:34	R				
09:5	4:15	R				
10:1	0:54	R				
10:2	4:13	R				
10:3	4:57	R				
12:0	0:04	R				
13:0	0:04	R				
13:4	2:58	R			•	
Start <sup>*</sup>						
2020-0 End T		90	7:00:04			
		9.0	8:00:04			
Size(K						
Ô	ſĊ	۱.		Ð		

Step 4 Start playback.

- Click , the playback starts from the first file by default.
- Click any file, the system plays back this file.

- In the time box on the top of the file list interface, you can enter the specific time to search the file that you want to view.
- In the File List area, there are 128 files can be displayed.
- File type: R indicates general recorded video; A indicates recorded video with external alarms; M indicates recorded video with motion detection events; I indicates recorded video with intelligent vents.

Click to return to the interface with calendar and CAM NAME list.

### Locking and Unlocking the Recorded Video

• To lock the recorded video, on the File List interface, select the check box of the recorded

video, and then click . The locked video will not be covered.

• To view the locked information, click , the **File Lock** interface is displayed.

The recorded video that is under writing or overwriting cannot be locked.

 To unlock the recorded video, in the File Lock interface, select the video, and then click Unlock.

File	Lock							
		CH	Type	Start Time	End Time	Size(KB)		
						35712		
						Unlock	Cancel	

Figure 5-116

# 5.10 Alarm Events Settings

# 5.10.1 Alarm Information

You can search, view and back up the alarm information.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ALARM > Alarm Info.

The Alarm Info interface is displayed.

Figure 5-117

Туре	All	
Start Time	2020-01-04 00:00:00	
End Time	2020-01-05 00:00:00	Search
13 Time	Туре	Search
	41:27 <tampering 8="" :=""></tampering>	$\odot$
2 2020-01-04 00:	41:29 <tampering 8="" :=""></tampering>	$\odot$
	05:33 <tampering 8="" :=""></tampering>	$\odot$
4 2020-01-04 09:	05:34 <tampering 8="" :=""></tampering>	$\odot$
5 2020-01-04 12:	33:15 <tampering 8="" :=""></tampering>	$\odot$
6 2020-01-04 12:	33:16 <tampering 8="" :=""></tampering>	$\odot$
7 2020-01-04 13:	31:34 〈Network Disconnection Event : 1〉	
8 2020-01-04 13:	31:39 〈CAM Offline Alarm : 8〉	
	04:04 〈Network Disconnection Event : 1〉	
10 2020-01-04 14:	04:29 〈CAM Offline Alarm : 8〉	
	12:09 〈CAM Offline Alarm : 8〉	
12 2020-01-04 16:	23:43 〈Network Disconnection Event : 1〉	$\odot$
13 2020-01-04 16:	23:53 〈Network Disconnection Event : 1〉	$\odot$
		Backup Details

- <u>Step 2</u> In the **Type** list, select the event type; In the **Start Time** box and **End Time** box, enter the specific time.
- Step 3 Click Search.

The search results are displayed.

- Step 4 Click **Backup** to back up the search results into the external storage device.
  - Click I to play the recorded video of alarm event.
  - Select an event and click **Details** to view the detailed information of the event.

# 5.10.2 Alarm Input Settings

Connect the alarm input and output ports by referring to "4.3 Connecting to Alarm Input and Output." You can configure the alarm settings for each channel individually or apply the settings to all channels and then save the settings.

## 5.10.2.1 Configuring Local Alarms

You can connect the alarm device to the alarm input port of the Device. When the alarm is activated on the alarm device, the alarm information will be uploaded to the Device, and then the Device outputs the local alarms in the way that you configure in this section.

```
Step 1 Select Main Menu > ALARM > Alarm-in Port > Local.
```

The **Local** interface is displayed.

	Figure	5-1	18
--	--------	-----	----

Local A	darm Box	CAM Ext	CAM Offline	ł	HDCVI Alarm	I
Alarm–in Port			Alarm Name	А	larm–in Port	1
Enable			Device Type	Ν	0 <b>•</b>	
	Setting		Anti-Dither	5		
Alarm-out Port	Setting		Post-Alarm	10		
Show Message	🔽 Report A	larm	Send Email			
🖌 Record Channel	Setting		Post-Record	10		
🗌 PTZ Linkage	Setting					
	Setting		Picture Stora		Setting	
			🗹 Log			
Alarm Tone	None					
				_		
Default Co	py to				Apply	Back

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the local alarms.

Table 5-37

Parameter	Description						
Alarm-in Port	Select the channel number.						
Alarm Name	Enter the customized alarm name.						
Enable	Enable or disable the local alarm function.						
Device Type	In the <b>Device Type</b> list, select <b>NO</b> or select <b>NC</b> as the voltage output						
	type.						
	Click <b>Setting</b> to display setting interface.						
Schedule	Define a period during which the motion detection is active. For details,						
Schedule	see "Setting Motion Detection Period" section in "5.10.4.1 Configuring						
	Motion Detection Settings."						
Anti-Dither	Configure the time period from end of event detection to the stop of						
Anti-Dither	alarm.						
	Click Setting to display setting interface.						
	• Local Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the alarm devices						
	connected to the selected output port.						
Alarm-out Port	• Extension Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the connected						
	alarm box.						
	Wireless Siren: Enable alarm activation through devices						
	connected by USB gateway or camera gateway.						
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the						
Post-Alarm	external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 0 seconds to 300						
	seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.						
Show Message	Select the Show Message check box to enable a pop-up message in						
Show wessaye	your local host PC.						

Parameter	Description
	Select the Report Alarm check box to enable the system to upload the
Report Alarm	alarm signal to the network (including alarm center) when an alarm
	event occurs.
	Select the Send Email check box to enable the system to send an
	email notification when an alarm event occurs.
Send Email	
	To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in Main
	Menu > NETWORK > Email.
	Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s)
	starts recording after an alarm event occurs.
Desard Channel	
Record Channel	The recording for local alarm recording and auto recording must be
	enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage
	Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."
	Click Setting to display the PTZ interface.
PTZ Linkage	Enable PTZ linkage actions, such as selecting the preset that you want
	to be called when an alarm event occurs.
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after
Post Record	the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300
	seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.
Tour	Select the <b>Tour</b> check box to enable a tour of the selected channels.
	Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected
	channel.
Picture Storage	
	To use this function, select Main Menu > CAMERA > Encode >
	Snapshot, in the Type list, select Event.
	Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event
	occurs, the extra screen outputs the settings configured in Main
Sub Screen	Menu > DISPLAY > Tour Setting > Sub Screen.
Sub Screen	
	Not all models support this function.
	• To use this function, extra screen shall be enabled.
	Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event
	occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in Main
Video Matrix	Menu > DISPLAY > Tour Setting.
	Not all models support this function.
Buzzer	Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.
Log	Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log.
	pply to complete the settings.

- - Click **Default** to restore the default setting.
  - Click **Copy to**, in the **Copy to** dialog box, select the additional channel(s) that you want to copy the local alarm settings to, and then click **Apply**.

### 5.10.2.2 Configuring Alarms from Alarm Box

You can connect the alarm box to the RS-485 port of the Device. When the alarm is detected by the alarm box, the alarm information will be uploaded to the Device, and then the Device outputs the alarms in the way that you configure in this section.

<u>Step 1</u>	Select Main Menu > ALARM > Alarm-in Port > Alarm Box.	
	The Alarm Box interface is displayed.	

Local	Alarm Box	CAM Ext	CAM Offline	HDCVI	Alarm
Alarm Box			Status		
Alarm-in Port			Alarm Name		
			Device Type		
			Anti-Dither		
Alarm-out Port			Post-Alarm		
Show Message	🗸 Repor	t Alarm	Send Email		
🖂 Record Channe	Setting				
PTZ Linkage					
	Setting		Picture Stora	ge Se	etting
	Buzzei				
Alarm Tone					
Default				Арј	olv Bac

Figure 5-119

- <u>Step 2</u> In the **Alarm Box** list, select the alarm box number corresponding to the address number configured by the DIP switch on the Alarm Box.
- Step 3 In the Alarm-in Port list, select the alarm input port on the Alarm Box.
- <u>Step 4</u> Configure the settings for other parameters of the Alarm Box. For details, see Table 5-37.
- <u>Step 5</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.
  - Ш

Click **Default** to restore the default setting.

### 5.10.2.3 Configuring Alarms from External IP Cameras

```
<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ALARM > Alarm-in Port > CAM Ext.
```

The CAM Ext interface is displayed.

Local	Alarm Box CAN	M Ext	CAM Offline	HDCVI /	Alarm	
Channel	8		larm Name	Alarm-in	Port8	
Enable		D	evice Type	NO		
Schedule	Setting		nti-Dither			
Alarm-out Port	Setting	Pe	ost-Alarm	10		
Show Message	🖌 Report Alarm		Send Email			
Record Channel	Setting		ost-Record	10		
🗌 PTZ Linkage	Setting					
D Tour	Setting		Picture Storage	Set	ting	
Sub Screen	Buzzer	5	🖊 Log			
🗌 Alarm Tone	None					
Default	Copy to Refresh			App	ly	Back

Figure 5-120

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the alarm input settings from the external IPC. For details, see Table 5-37. <u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

 $\square$ 

- Click **Default** to restore the default setting.
- Click **Copy to** to copy the settings to other channels.
- Click **Refresh** to refresh configured settings.

# 5.10.2.4 Configuring Alarms for IP Camera Offline

You can configure the alarm settings for the situation when the IP camera is offline.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ALARM > Alarm-in Port > CAM Offline.

The CAM Offline interface is displayed.

Local	Alarm Box	CAM Ext	CAM Offline	HDCVI A	Alarm
Channel	8				
Enable					
Alarm-out Port	Setting		Post-Alarm	10	
Show Messag	ge 🔽 Report Al	larm	Send Email		
Record Chan	nel Setting		Post-Record	10	
🗌 PTZ Linkage	Setting				
🗌 Tour	Setting		Picture Storag	ge Set	ting
Sub Screen			🗹 Log		
🗌 Alarm Tone	None				
Default	Copy to Refre	sh		Appl	y Back

Figure 5-121

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the alarm input settings from the offline IPC.

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

- $\square$
- Click **Default** to restore the default setting.
- Click **Copy to** to copy the settings to other channels.

## 5.10.2.5 Configuring Alarms from HDCVI Devices

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ALARM > Alarm-in Port > HDCVI Alarm. The HDCVI Alarm interface is displayed.

Figure 5-122

Local		Alarr	n Box	CAM E	xt	CAM Offlin	e	HDCVI Alarm		
Channel		All								
	Enable	Setting	Status	Channel		Туре		Name		
									► ►	
								Apply	Back	

<u>Step 2</u> In the **Channel** list, select a channel or **All**.

- Step 3 Click
- <u>Step 4</u> Configure the settings for other parameters of the Alarm Box. For details, see Table 5-37.
- <u>Step 5</u> Click **OK** to save the settings.
- Step 6 Click Apply to complete the settings.

# 5.10.3 Alarm Output Settings

### 5.10.3.1 Configuring Alarm Output

When the Device activates alarms, the connected alarm device generates alarms in the way that you can configure in this section. You can connect to the output port of the Device or connect wirelessly.

- Auto: When an alarm event is triggered on the Device, the connected alarm device generates alarms.
- Manual: The alarm device is forced to keep generating alarms.
- **Stop**: The alarm output function is not enabled.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ALARM > Alarm-out Port > Alarm Mode.

The Alarm Mode interface is displayed.

Figure	5-123
--------	-------

arm Mode	White Light	Siren	
Local Alarm			
Alarm Type	All		
Manual			
Off			
Status			
Extension Alarm			
Alarm Box			
Alarm Type			
Manual			
Off			
Status			
Alarm Reset	0	)K	
			Apply

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the alarm output. For details, see Table 5-38.

Tab	le	5-38
lab	le	5-38

Parameter		Description	
Local	Alarm Type	Select alarm type for each alarm output port.	
Alarm	Status	Indicates the status of each alarm output port.	
Alarm Box		Select the alarm box number corresponding to the address	
Extension	Alaini bux	number configured by the DIP switch on the Alarm Box.	
Alarm	Alarm Type	Select the alarm type for each alarm output ports.	
Status		Indicates the status of each alarm output port.	
Alarm Reset		Click <b>OK</b> to clear all alarm output status.	

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to save the settings.

### 5.10.3.2 Configuring White Light

When the motion detection alarm is activated, the system links the camera to generate white light alarm.

To use this function, connect at least one white light camera to your Device.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > ALARM > Alarm-out Port > White Light.

The White Light interface is displayed.

Alarm Mode	White Light	Siren		
Channel				
Delay				
Mode	Always	s On i Flicker		
Flicker Frequency				
Refresh			Apply	Back

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the white light parameters.

Table	5-39
-------	------

Parameter	Description
Channel	In the Channel list, select a channel that is connected to a white
Channel	light camera.
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after
Delay	the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 5 seconds to 30
	seconds, and the default value is 5 seconds.
Mode	Set the alarm mode of white light to be Always on or Flicker.
Flicker Frequency	When setting the alarm mode of white light to be <b>Flash</b> , you can select the flash frequency from <b>Low</b> , <b>Middle</b> , and <b>High</b> .

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

### 5.10.3.3 Configuring Siren

When the motion detection alarm is activated, the system links the camera to generate sound alarm.

To use this function, connect at least one camera that supports audio function.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ALARM > Alarm-out Port > Siren.

The **Siren** interface is displayed.

Alarm Mode	White Light	Siren		
Channel		Ŧ		
Delay				
Audio Clip				
Volume				
Update Audio C	lip			
Please select up				
Refresh			Apply	Back

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the siren parameters.

Table	5-40
i ubic	0 10

Parameter	Description
Channel	In the <b>Channel</b> list, select a channel that is connected to a camera that supports audio function.
Play	Click <b>Play</b> to manually trigger the IP camera to play audio file.
Delay	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 5 seconds to 30 seconds, and the default value is 5 seconds.
Audio Clip	Select the audio clip for the siren sound. The default setting is <b>Clip 1</b> .
Volume	Select the volume for the audio clip. You can select the flash frequency from <b>Low</b> , <b>Middle</b> , and <b>High</b> .
Update Audio Clip	Import the upgrade audio file (.bin) to upgrade the alarm audio file of the camera. For details, see "Upgrade Audio File of Camera

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

### Upgrade Audio File of Camera

This function is supported only on the local interface.

<u>Step 1</u> Prepare a USB device or other external storage device and plug it into the Device.

Step 2 Click Browse.

The **Browse** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-126

Device Name	sdb1(USB USB)		Refresh Fo	rmat	
	7.51 GB				
	0.00 KB				
Name		Size	Туре	Delete	
🗋 cx				<b>市</b>	
FOUND.000				亩	
				亩	
🗅 System Volume Ir				<b>市</b>	
				亩	
<ul> <li>An example of the second second</li></ul>				亩	
				亩	
<ul> <li></li></ul>				ā	
New Folder				OK	Back

<u>Step 3</u> Select the upgrade audio file (.bin).

<u>Step 4</u> Click **OK** to return to the Siren interface.

<u>Step 5</u> Click **Upgrade** to upgrade the alarm audio file of the camera.

## 5.10.4 Video Detection

Video detection adopts computer vision and image processing technology. The technology analyzes the video images to detect the obvious changes such as moving objects and blurriness. The system activates alarms when such changes are detected.

### 5.10.4.1 Configuring Motion Detection Settings

When the moving object appears and moves fast enough to reach the preset sensitivity value, the system activates the alarm.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ALARM > Video Detection > Motion Detection.

The **Motion Detection** interface is displayed.

Motion Detection Vid	leo Loss Video '	Tampering	Video Quality An.			
Channel				Setting	z	
Enable			PIR Alarm			
	Setting		Anti-Dither	5		
Alarm-out Port	Setting		Post-Alarm	10		
Show Message	🗌 Report Alarm		Send Email			
🛃 Record Channel	Setting		Post-Record	10		
🗌 PTZ Linkage	Setting					
Tour	Setting		🗌 Picture Stora		Setting	
	Buzzer					
Alarm Tone	None					
White Light	Siren					
Default Cop	y to Test				Apply	Back

Figure 5-127

 $\underline{Step \ 2}$  Configure the settings for the motion detection parameters.

Table 5-41

Parameter	Description
Channel	In the <b>Channel</b> list, select a channel to set the motion detection.
Region	Click Setting to define the motion detection region.
Enable	Enable or disable the motion detection function.
PIR Alarm	<ul> <li>PIR function helps enhancing the accuracy and validity of motion detect. It can filter the meaningless alarms that are activated by the objects such as falling leaves, flies. The detection range by PIR is smaller than the field angle.</li> <li>PIR function is enabled by default if it is supported by the cameras. Enabling PIR function will get the motion detect to be enabled automatically to generate motion detection alarms; if the PIR function is not enabled, the motion detect just has the general effect.</li> <li>Only when the channel type is CVI, the PIR function can be enabled.</li> <li>If the camera does not support PIR function, it will be unusable.</li> <li>If the Device does not support PIR function, it will not be displayed on the interface.</li> </ul>
Schedule	Define a period during which the motion detection is active.

Parameter	Description
Anti-Dither	Configure the time period from end of event detection to the stop of
	alarm.
	Click Setting to display setting interface.
	• General Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the alarm
	devices connected to the selected output port.
Alarm-out Port	• External Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the
	connected alarm box.
	• Wireless Siren: Enable alarm activation through devices
	connected by USB gateway or camera gateway.
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after
	the external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 0 seconds
Post-Alarm	to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds. If you enter 0,
	there will be no delay.
	Select the <b>Show Message</b> check box to enable a pop-up message
Show Message	in your local host PC.
	Select the <b>Report Alarm</b> check box to enable the system to upload
Report Alarm	the alarm signal to the network (including alarm center) when an
	alarm event occurs.
	Select the Send Email check box to enable the system to send an
	email notification when an alarm event occurs.
Send Email	
	To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in
	Main Menu > NETWORK > Email.
	Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected
	channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs.
	$\square$
Record Channel	The recording for motion detection and auto recording function
	must be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded
	Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."
	Click <b>Setting</b> to display the PTZ interface.
	Enable PTZ linkage actions, such as selecting the preset that you
	want to be called when an alarm event occurs.
PTZ Linkage	$\sim$
	Motion Detect can only activate PTZ preset.
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording
Post Record	after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to
	300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.
Tour	Select the Tour check box to enable a tour of the selected
	channels.
	Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected
	channel.
Picture Storage	
	To use this function, select Main Menu > CAMERA > Encode >
	Snapshot, in the Type list, select Event.

Parameter	Description			
	Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event			
Sub Screen	occurs, the extra screen outputs the settings configured in Main			
	Menu > DISPLAY > Tour > Sub Screen.			
	<ul> <li>Not all models support this function.</li> </ul>			
	• To use this function, extra screen shall be enabled.			
	Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event			
	occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in			
Video Matrix	Main Menu > DISPLAY > Tour.			
	Not all models support this function.			
Buzzer	Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.			
Log	Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm			
Log	log.			
Alarm Tone	Select to enable audio broadcast/alarm tones in response to a			
Alarm Tone	motion detection event.			
White Light	Select the check box to enable white light alarm of the camera.			
Siren	Select the check box to enable sound alarm of the camera.			

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to save the settings.

#### $\square$

- Click **Default** to restore the default setting.
- Click **Copy to**, in the **Copy to** dialog box, select the additional channel(s) that you want to copy the motion detection settings to, and then click **Apply**.
- Click **Test** to test the settings.

#### Setting the Motion Detection Region

Step 1 Next to **Region**, click **Setting**.

The region setting screen is displayed.

- <u>Step 2</u> Point to the middle top of the interface.
  - The setting interface is displayed.

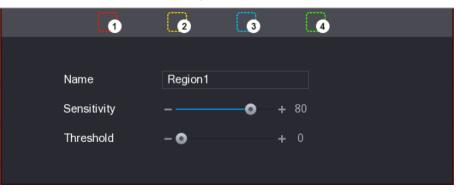
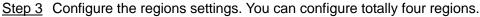


Figure 5-128



- 1) Select one region, for example, click 10.
- 2) Drag on the screen to select the region that you want to detect. The selected area shows the color that represents the region.
- 3) Configure the parameters.

Parameter	Description
Name	Enter a name for the region.
Sopoitivity	Every region of every channel has an individual sensitivity value.
Sensitivity	The bigger the value is, the easier the alarms can be activated.
Thrashold	Adjust the threshold for motion detect. Every region of every channel
Threshold	has an individual threshold.

When anyone of the four regions activates motion detect alarm, the channel where this region belongs to will activate motion detect alarm.

<u>Step 4</u> Right-click on the screen to exit the region setting interface.

Step 5 On the Motion Detection interface, click Apply to complete the settings.

#### **Setting Motion Detection Period**

#### $\square$

The system only activates the alarm in the defined period.

Step 1 Next to Schedule, click Setting.

The **Setting** interface is displayed..



Figure 5-129

<u>Step 2</u> Define the motion detection period. By default, it is active all the time.

- Define the period by drawing.
  - Define for a specified day of a week: On the timeline, click the half-hour blocks to select the active period.
  - ♦ Define for several days of a week: Click 🛄 before each day, the icon

switches to . On the timeline of any selected day, click the half-hour blocks

to select the active periods, all the days with 📟 will take the same settings.

♦ Define for all days of a week: Click All, all 🛄 switches to 🔤. On the

timeline of any day, click the half-hour blocks to select the active periods, all the days will take the same settings.

- Define the period by editing. Take Sunday as an example.
- 1) Click

The **Period** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-130

Period					
Day					
Period 1	00 : 00	- 11: 30			
Period 2	12 : 00	- 24 : 00			
Period 3	00 : 00	- 24 : 00			
Period 4	00 : 00	- 24 : 00			
Period 5	00 : 00	- 24 : 00			
Period 6	00 : 00	- 24 : 00			
Copy to					
🗌 All					
🔽 Sun					
			 	 ОК	Back

- 2) Enter the time frame for the period, and then select the check box to enable the settings.
  - $\diamond$  There are six periods for you to set for each day.
  - Under Copy to, select All to apply the settings to all the days of a week, or select specific day(s) that you want to apply the settings to.
- 3) Click **OK** to save the settings.

Step 3 On the Motion Detection interface, click Apply to complete the settings.

### 5.10.4.2 Configuring Video Loss Settings

When the video loss occurs, the system activates the alarm.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ALARM > Video Detection > Video Loss. The Video Loss interface is displayed.

Figure 5-131

Motion Detection	Video Loss Video Tam	pering Video Quality An	
Channel			
Enable			
Schedule	Setting	CAM AntiDither <b>0</b> sec.	
Alarm-out Port	Setting	Post-Alarm 10 sec.	
Show Message	🖌 Report Alarm	Send Email	
Record Channel	Setting	Post-Record 10 sec.	
🗌 PTZ Linkage	Setting		
Tour	Setting	Picture Storage     Setting	
🗌 Buzzer	🖌 Log		
🗌 Alarm Tone	None		
			Dl-
Default	Copy to	Apply	Back

<u>Step 2</u> To configure the settings for the video loss detection parameters, see "5.10.4.1 Configuring Motion Detection Settings."

 $\square$ 

For PTZ activation, different from motion detection, the video loss detection can activate PTZ preset, tour, and pattern.

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

- Click **Default** to restore the default setting.
- Click **Copy to**, in the **Copy to** dialog box, select the additional channel(s) that you want to copy the motion detection settings to, and then click **Apply**.

## 5.10.4.3 Configuring Tampering Settings

When the camera lens is covered, or the video is displayed in a single color because of the causes such as sunlight status, the monitoring cannot be continued normally. To avoid such situations, you can configure the tampering alarm settings.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ALARM > Video Detection > Video Tampering.

The Video Tampering interface is displayed.

Motion Detection Vid	eo Loss Video Tam	pering	Video Quality An					
Channel								
Enable			Sensitivity	3				
Schedule	Setting		CAM AntiDither	0				
Alarm-out Port	Setting		Post-Alarm	10				
Show Message	🔽 Report Alarm		Send Email					
Record Channel	Setting		Post-Record	10				
🗌 PTZ Linkage	Setting							
🗌 Tour	Setting		Picture Storag		Settir	ıg		
Buzzer	🗹 Log							
🗌 Alarm Tone	None							
Default Copy	to				Apply		Back	

Figure 5-132

<u>Step 2</u> To configure the settings for the tampering detection parameters, see "5.10.4.1 Configuring Motion Detection Settings."

For PTZ activation, different from motion detection, the video loss detection can activate PTZ preset, tour, and pattern.

Step 3 Click Apply to complete the settings.

- Click **Default** to restore the default setting.
- Click **Copy to**, in the **Copy to** dialog box, select the additional channel(s) that you want to copy the motion detection settings to, and then click **Apply**.

# 5.10.4.4 Configuring Video Quality Analytics

### 

This function can be used only when it is supported by the camera.

When the video appear the conditions such as blurry, overexposed, or the color changes, the system activates the alarm.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ALARM > Video Detection > Video Quality Analytics.

The Video Quality Analytics interface is displayed.

Motion Detection	Video Loss	Video Tampering	Video Quality An			
Channel Enable	1			Setting		
Schedule Alarm-out Port Show Messag	Setting Setting		Post-Alarm	10		
Buzzer Alarm Tone	✓ Log None					
Default				Appl	у	Back

- <u>Step 2</u> To configure the settings for the diagnosis parameters, see "5.10.4.1 Configuring Motion Detection Settings."
- Step 3 Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

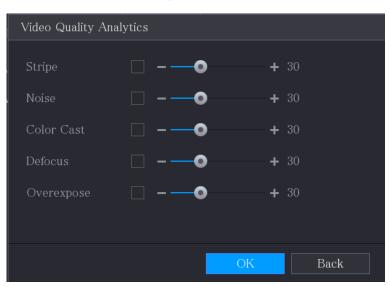
Click **Default** to restore the default setting.

#### Setting the Types for Diagnosing Targets

Step 1 Next to Rule, click Setting.

The Video Quality Analytics interface is displayed.

Figure 5-134



Step 2 Select the items that you want to diagnose and set the threshold (30 by default).

Table 5-43

Parameter	Description
-----------	-------------

Parameter	Description
	A horizontal, vertical or diagonal stripe that might appear in the
Stripe	video because of device aging or electronic interruption. Such
	stripe brings visual interruption.
Noise	Video noises such as blurriness or quality reduction that is caused
Noise	by optical distortion or device problem during camera shooting.
Color Cast	Variances in the normal proportions of RGB colors.
	Blurry video is caused during camera shooting, transferring and
Defocus	processing. Such condition is a common image quality reduction
	problem and defined as out of focus.
	The video brightness refers to the intensity of image pixel. The
Overexpecture	range is between 0 (the darkest black) and 255 (the brightest
Overexposure	white). If the brightness exceeds the threshold, the image is over
	exposed.
Step 3 Click Appl	v to save the settings.

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to save the settings.

The system returns to the Video Quality Analytics interface.

<u>Step 4</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

Click Default to restore the default setting.

# 5.10.5 System Events

You can configure the alarm output for three types of system event (HDD, Network, and User). When there is an abnormal system event occurs, the system activates alarms in the way that you configure in this section.

### 5.10.5.1 Configuring HDD Event Settings

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ALARM > Exception > Disk. The Disk interface is displayed.

Figure 5-135

Disk	Network		
Event Type Enable	No Disk		
Alarm-out Port	Setting Report Alarm Log None	Post-Alarm 10 sec. ☐ Send Email	
		Apply Bac	k

 $\underline{Step \ 2} \quad Configure \ the \ settings \ for \ the \ HDD \ event.$ 

Table 5-44

Parameter	Description		
Event Type	In the Event Type list, select No Disk, Disk Error, or Low Space as		
Event Type	the event type.		
Enable	Enable or disable the HDD event detection function.		
	Click Setting to display setting interface.		
	• Local Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the alarm devices		
	connected to the selected output port.		
Alarm-out Port	• Extension Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the connected		
	alarm box.		
	Wireless Siren: Enable alarm activation through devices		
	connected by USB gateway or camera gateway.		
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the		
Post-Alarm	external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300		
	seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.		
Show Message	Select the Show Message check box to enable a pop-up message in		
Chew Meessage	your local host PC.		
	Select the <b>Report Alarm</b> check box to enable the system to upload the		
Report Alarm	alarm signal to the network (including alarm center) when an alarm		
	event occurs.		
	Select the Send Email check box to enable the system to send an		
Send Email	email notification when an alarm event occurs.		
	To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in <b>Main</b>		
	Menu > NETWORK > Email.		
Buzzer	Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.		

Parameter	Description
Log	Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log.
Alarm Tone	Select to enable audio broadcast/alarm tone in response to a HDD
	alarm event.

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

# 5.10.5.2 Configuring Network Event Settings

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ALARM > Exception > Network.

The **Network** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-136

Disk	Network		
Event Type	Offline		
Enable			
Alarm-out Port	Setting	Post-Alarm 10 sec.	
Show Message		Send Email	
Record Channel	Setting	Post-Record 10 sec.	
🗌 Buzzer	🗹 Log		
🗌 Alarm Tone	None		
		Apply	Back

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the Network event.

Table 5-45

Parameter	Description		
Event Type	In the Event Type list, select Offlice, IP Conflict, or MAC Conflict as		
Степстуре	the event type.		
Enable	Enable or disable the Network event detection function.		
	Click <b>Setting</b> to display setting interface.		
	General Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the alarm devices		
	connected to the selected output port.		
Alarm-out Port	• External Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the connected		
	alarm box.		
	Wireless Siren: Enable alarm activation through devices		
	connected by USB gateway or camera gateway.		
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the		
Post-Alarm	external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300		
	seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.		

Parameter	Description		
Chaw Magazara	Select the Show Message check box to enable a pop-up message in		
Show Message	your local host PC.		
	Select the Send Email check box to enable the system to send an		
	email notification when an alarm event occurs.		
Send Email			
	To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in Main		
	Menu > NETWORK > Email.		
Buzzer	Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.		
Log	Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log.		
Post Record	Continue to record for some time after the alarm is ended. The value		
	ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds.		
Alarm Tone	Select to enable audio broadcast/alarm tones in response to a network		
Alarm Tone	alarm event.		

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

# 5.10.6 Configuring Disarming

You can disarm all alarm linkage actions as needed. <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ALARM > Disarming.

Step 2 Click to enable disarming.

Disarming		
Disarm Alarm Linkage	Action	
	🗹 All	
	☑ Buzzer	
	🖌 Show Message	
	🗹 Alarm-out Port	
	🔽 Send Email	
	🔽 Report Alarm	
Default		Apply Back

Figure 5-137

<u>Step 3</u> Select alarm linkage actions to disarm.

 $\square$ 

All alarm linkage actions will be disarmed when you select All.

Step 4 Click Apply.

# 5.11 AI Function

# 5.11.1 For Pro Al Series

### $\square$

#### The faces are fuzzily processed to comply with relevant regulations.

Al module provides face detection, face recognition, IVS functions, and video structuring. These functions take effect after they are configured and enabled. It adopts deep learning and can realize precision alarms.

- Face detection: The Device can analyze the faces captured by the camera and link the configured alarms.
- Face recognition: The Device can compare the captured faces with the face library and then link the configured alarms.
- IVS: The IVS function processes and analyzes the human and vehicle images to extract the key information to match with the preset rules. When the detected behaviors match with the rules, the system activates alarms. The IVS function can avoid wrong alarms by filtering the factors such as rains, light, and animals.
- Video structuring: The device can detect and extract key features from the human bodies and non-motor vehicles in the video, and then build a structured database. You can search any target you need with these features. For example, you can search any people who wears yellow short sleeve shirt. See more details in "5.11.1.4 Video Structuring."

### 5.11.1.1 Face Detection

The Device can analyze the pictures captured by the camera to detect whether the faces are on the pictures. You can search and filter the recorded videos the faces and play back.

If you select AI by device, then among face detection and recognition, IVS function, and video structuring, you can use one of them at the same time for the same channel.

#### 5.11.1.1.1 Configuring Face Detection Parameters

The alarms are generated according to the configured parameters.

<u>Step 1</u> Main Menu > AI > Parameters > Face Detection.

The Face Detection interface is displayed.

Channel	1			
Enable		Rule	View Settin	g
Schedule	Setting			
Alarm-out Port	Setting	Post-Alarm	10	sec.
Show Message	🗹 Report Alarm	🗌 Send Em	ail	
🛃 Record Channel				
PTZ Linkage	Setting	Post-Recorc	10	sec.
🗌 Tour				
Picture Storage				
Sub Screen	☐ Buzzer ✓ Log			
🗌 Alarm Tone	None			
White Light	Siren			

- <u>Step 2</u> In the **Channel** list, select a channel that you want to configure face detection function, and then enable it.
- <u>Step 3</u> Configure the parameters.

Ta	ble	5-46	
10	210	0 10	

Parameter	Description				
	You can select from AI by Camera and AI by Device.				
	• Al by Camera: This option requires certain Al cameras. The				
Turne	camera will do all the AI analysis, and then give the results to				
Туре	the DVR.				
	• Al by Device: The camera only transmits normal video stream				
	to the DVR, and then the DVR will do all the AI analysis.				
	Click View Setting to draw areas to filter the target.				
	You can configure two filtering targets (maximum size and				
Rule	minimum size). When the target is smaller than the minimum size				
	or larger than the maximum size, no alarms will be activated. The				
	maximum size should be larger than the minimum size.				
	Define a period during which the detection is active.				
Schedule	For details, see "Setting Motion Detection Period" section in				
	"5.10.4.1 Configuring Motion Detection Settings."				

Parameter	Description
	Click <b>Setting</b> to display setting interface.
	General Alarm: Enable general alarm and select the alarm
	output port.
	• Ext. Alarm: Connect the alarm box to the Device and then
Alarm-out Port	enable it.
	Wireless Siren: Connect the wireless gateway to the Device
	and then enable it. For details, see "5.12 IoT Function."
	When an alarm event occurs, the system links the peripheral alarm
	devices connected to the selected output port.
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after
Post-Alarm	the external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 0 seconds
	to 300 seconds. If you enter 0, there will be no delay.
Show Message	Select the <b>Show Message</b> check box to enable a pop-up alarm
	message in your local host PC.
	Select the <b>Report Alarm</b> check box to enable the system to upload
	the alarm signal to the network (including alarm center) when an
	alarm event occurs.
Report Alarm	
	Not all models support this function.
	• The corresponding parameters in the alarm center should be
	configured. For details, see "5.15.1.12 Configuring Alarm
	Center Settings."
	Select the <b>Send Email</b> check box to enable the system to send an email notification when an alarm event occurs.
Send Email	
	To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in
	Main Menu > NETWORK > Email.
	Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected
	channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs.
Record Channel	The recording for intelligence event and auto recording function
	must be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded
	Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."
	Click <b>Setting</b> to display the PTZ interface.
PTZ Linkage	Enable PTZ linkage actions, such as selecting the preset that you
	want to be called when an alarm event occurs.
	$\square$
	To use this function, the PTZ operations must be configured. For
	details, see "5.4 Controlling PTZ Cameras."
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording
Post Record	after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to
	300 seconds.

Parameter	Description
	Select the <b>Tour</b> check box to enable a tour of the selected
	channels.
Tour	
1001	• To use this function, the tour setting must be configured.
	• After the tour is ended, the live view screen returns to the view
	layout before tour started.
	Select the <b>Picture Storage</b> check box to take a snapshot of the
	selected channel.
Picture Storage	
	To use this function, make sure the snapshot function is enabled
	for Intel in Main Menu > STORAGE > Schedule > Snapshot.
	Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event
	occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in
Video Matrix	"Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR > Extra Screen."
	Not all models support this function.
	• The extra screen must be enabled to support this function.
Buzzer	Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.
Log	Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm
Log	log.
Alarm Tone	Select to enable audio broadcast in response to a face detection
Alanni Tone	event.
White Light	Select the check box to enable the white light alarm of the camera.
Siren	Select the check box to enable the sound alarm of the camera.

Step 4 Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

### 5.11.1.1.2 Searching for and Playing Detected Faces

You can search the detected faces and play back.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > AI > AI Search > Face Detection.

The Face Detection interface is displayed.

Figure 5-139						
Channel	1					
Start Time	2020 - 03 - 02	00:00:00				
End Time	2020 - 03 - 03	00:00:00				
Gender	All					
Age	All					
Glasses	All					
Beard	All					
Mouth Mask	All					
Expression	All					
	Smart Search					

- <u>Step 2</u> Select the channel, enter the start time and end time, and set for the gender, age, glasses, beard, and mask.
- Step 3 Click Smart Search.

The results are displayed.

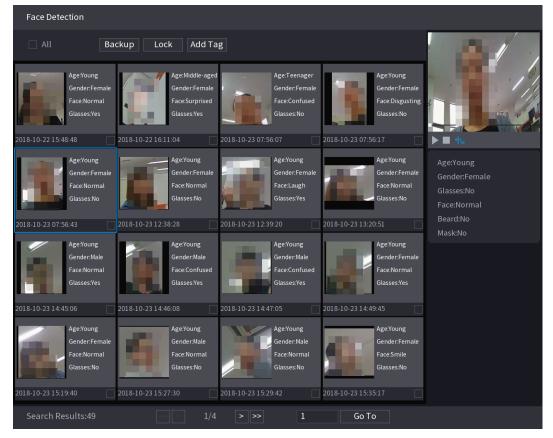


Figure 5-140

<u>Step 4</u> Select the face that you want to play back. The picture with registered information is displayed.

Figure 5-141

Face Detection				
All Bad	ckup Lock Add Ta	g		
Age:Young Gender:Female Face:Normal Giasses:Yes 2018-10-22 15:48:48	Age:Middle-aged Gender:Female Face:Surprised Glasses:Yes 2018-10-22 16:11:04	Age:Teenager Gender:Female Face:Confused Glasses:No 2018-10-23 07:56:07	AgeYoung Gender.Female Face.Disgusting Glasses:No 2018-10-23 07:56:17	
AgeYoung Gender:Female Face:Normal Glasses:No 2018-10-23 07:56:43	Age:Young Gender:Female Face:Normal Glasses:No 2018-10-23 12:38:28	Age:Young Gender:Female Face:Laugh Glasses:Yes 2018-10-23 12:39:20	Age:Young Gender:Female Face:Normal Glasses:No 2018-10-23 13:20:51	Age:Young Gender:Female Glasses:No Face:Normal Beard:No
Age:Young Gender:Male Face:Normal Glasses:Yes	Age:Young Gender:Male Face:Confused Glasses:Yes	Age:Young Gender:Male Face:Confused Glasses:Yes	Age:Young Gender,Female Face:Normal Glasses:Yes	Mask:No
Age:Young Gender:Female Face:Normal Glasses:No	2018-10-23 14:46:08	2018-10-23 14:47:05	2018-10-23 14:49:45	
Search Results:49	2018-10-23 15:27:30     Image: state	>>> 1	Go To	

Step 5 Click to start playing back the recorded detected face snapshots.

Double-click on the playing interface to switch between full screen playing and thumbnail playing.

You can also do the following operations to the recorded files.

- To export the database file (.csv) to the external storage device, select files, click **Export**, and then select the save path.
- To back up the recorded files to the external storage device, select files, click **Backup**, select the save path and file type, and then click **Start**.

File Backup

Device Name

sdb1(USB USB)

Path

XVR/2018-10-23/

Browse

Video

Picture

File Type

DAV

1

3

48 MB(Space Needed)

Start

Figure 5-142

- To lock the files to make it unable to be overwritten, select the files, and then click **Lock**.
- To add a mark to the file, select the files and then click Add Tag.

# 5.11.1.2 Face Recognition

Face recognition applies to AI preview mode and smart search.

- Al preview mode: Supports comparing the detected faces with the face library, and display the comparison results.
- Smart search: Supports faces searching by faces attributes or portraits.

- If you select AI by device, then among face detection and recognition, IVS function, and video structuring, you can use one of them at the same time for the same channel.
- Before enabling face recognition function for a channel, the face detection must be enabled first for this channel.

#### 5.11.1.2.1 Face Library Management

You should create a face library for comparing the detected faces and the faces in the library. The Device supports creating maximum 20 libraries and registering 100,000 faces.

### Creating a Face Library

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > Al > Database > Face Database Config. The Face Database Config interface is displayed.

Figure 5-143

Туре		Local						
1		Name	Register No.	Failed No.	Error No.	Status	Modify	Details <sup>s</sup>
		vip				Arming	ø	Ē
Mode	ling	Refresh				Ac	ld	Delete

<u>Step 2</u> At **Type**, you can select **Local** or **Remote**.

- Local: Viewing the existing face databases or adding new one on the DVR.
- **Remote**: If you have face recognition camera, you can select this to view the existing face databases or adding new one on the camera.

#### Click Add.

The **Add** interface is displayed.

	Figu	ire 5-144	
Add			
Name			
		ОК	Back

- <u>Step 3</u> Enter the face library name, and then click **OK**. The created library is displayed.
  - Click to modify library name.

- Click to view the library details and add new faces to the library. For details, see "Adding Face Pictures."
- Select the library, and then click **Modeling**. The system will extract the attributes of face pictures in the library for the future comparison.
- Select the library, and then click **Delete** to delete the library.

Figure 5-145

Ту	/pe		Local	•				
	1		Name	Register No.	Failed No.	Error No.	Status Modify	Details 3
			vip				Arming 🍡 🖍	Ê
	Mode	ling	Refresh				Add	Delete

### **Adding Face Pictures**

You can add face pictures to the existing libraries one by one or by batch, or add from the detected faces.

To add face pictures one by one or by batch, you need to get the pictures from the USB storage device. The picture size should be smaller than 256K with resolution between 200×200–6000×5000.

#### Adding One Face Picture

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > Al > Database > Face Database Config. The Face Database Config interface is displayed.

Step 2 Click of the library that you want to configure.

The **Details** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-146

Details			
Name Gender /	All 👻 ID No.	Modeli All 🔻 Res	et Search
Register ID Batch re Moc	deling Delete 🗌 All		
	<< 1/ 1 >>> 1		

Step 3 Click Register ID.

The **Register ID** interface is displayed.

Regi	ster ID			
		Name		
		Gender	🗿 Male	🔘 Female
		Birthday	Year Mon	
	E	Address		
		ID Type		
		ID No.		
		Country		
			Reset	Cancel

Figure 5-147

Step 4 Click to add a face picture. The **Browse** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-148

Browse					
Device Name Total Space Free Space	sdb1(USB USB) 14.93 GB 14.92 GB	Refresh			
Address					
Name			Size	Туре	Delete
🗖 XVR				Folder	
				OK	Back

<u>Step 5</u> Select a face picture and enter the registration information.

Register ID			
	Name	margie	
	Gender		● Female
	Birthday	1996 03	07
	Address	TTYUI	
	ID Type	Passport	
a	ID No.	11111111111111	1555555
	Country	United States	
Add	More OK	Reset	Cancel

Step 6 Click OK.

The system prompts the registration is successful.

<u>Step 7</u> On the **Details** interface, click **Search**.

The system prompts modeling is successful.

If the system prompts the message indicating modeling is in process, wait a while and then click **Search** again. If modeling is failed, the registered face picture cannot be used for face recognition.

<b>B</b> 1 1					
Details					
Name	Gender All 🔹 ID No		Modeli All	▼ Reset	Search
Register ID Batch	n re Modeling Delete				
Name : nic Gender : Male ID No. :	Name : margie Gender : Female ID No. : 111111111111				
Modeling Successful	🖋 Modeling Successful 🏾 🖍				
	[<] 1/ 1	> >> 1			

Figure 5-150

#### Adding Face Pictures in Batch

<u>Step 1</u> Give a name to the face picture by referring to Table 5-47.

Naming format	Description
Name	Enter the name.
Gender	Enter 1 or 2. 1 represents male, and 2 represents female.
Birthday	Enter numbers in the format of yyyy-mm-dd.
Country	Enter the abbreviation of country. For example, CN for China.
	1 represents ID card; 2 represents passport; 3 represents military
ID Type	officer password.
ID No.	Enter the ID number.
Address	Enter the address.

Table 5-47

<u>Step 2</u> On the **Details** interface, click **Batch register**.

The Batch register interface is displayed.

Figure 5-151

Batch register			
F Select file, max. select 500 each		Select a folder	
The image format shall be .jpg Naming format: Name#SGender# AAddress.jpg(Name required, othe e.g. Tom#S1#B19900101#NUS#T1# Gender: 1.Male 2.Female ID Type: 1.ID Card 2.Passport 3.Milit	rs optional) M123456789‡	#ANorth Main Street.jpg	
			Cancel

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Select file, max select 500 each time** or **Select a folder** to import face pictures. <u>Step 4</u> Click **OK** to complete batch registration.

## Adding the Detected Faces

<u>Step 1</u> Right-click on the live view screen, and then select **Live Mode > Al Mode**. The Al Mode live view screen is displayed.

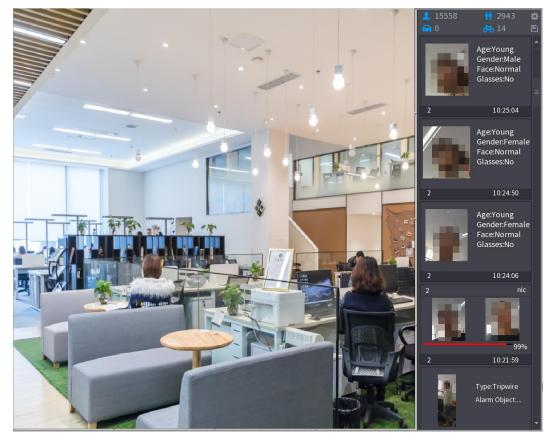


Figure 5-152

<u>Step 2</u> Double-click the detected face snapshot that you want to add. The snapshot playing back interface is displayed.

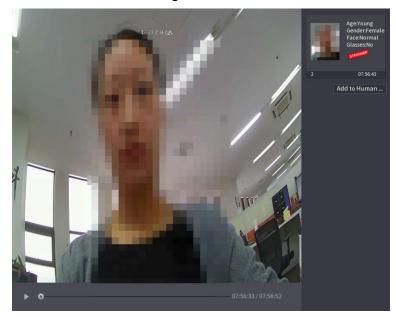


Figure 5-154

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Add to Human Face Database**. The **Register ID** interface is displayed.

	Register	ĪD	~	: (7°C H:04%					Age:Young Gender:Female Face:Normal Glasses:No
4			Name Birthday State ID Type	Year 🔻 📖	▼ ▼ C	iender ountry ddress DNo.	Male	Female *	07:56:43 to Human
*	2 1 2		Face Library N 1 2	Registered No. 5175 0		l Error p	people 0 0		
						- 07:56:33 /	ОК ОК 107:56:52	Cancel	

<u>Step 4</u> Select the face library and enter the ID information. <u>Step 5</u> Click **OK** to complete registration.

## 5.11.1.2.2 Face Recognition Configuration

You can compare the detected faces with the faces in the library to judge if the detected face belongs to the library. The comparison result will be displayed on the AI mode live view screen and smart search interface, and link the alarms.

## <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > AI > Parameters > Face Recognition.

The Face Recognition interface is displayed.

Figure 5-155

Channel Enable	1					
Schedule Target Face Data Stranger Alarm	Setting Setting					
0 Enable	Name	Similarity	Modify Para	ameters	Delete	
Default					Apply	Back

- <u>Step 2</u> In the **Channel** list, select a channel that you want to configure face recognition function, and then enable it.
- Step 3 Set the Schedule. For details, see "5.10.4.1 Configuring Motion Detection Settings."

## <u>Step 4</u> Set the **Target Face Database**.

1) Click Setting.

The Face Database interface is displayed.

Figure 5-156

F	ace Database				
	0	Name	Register No.	Failed No.	Error No.
					OK Cancel

- 2) Select one or multiple face libraries.
- 3) Click OK.

The selected face library is listed.

Figure 5-157

Channel Enable	1					
Schedule Target Face Data Stranger Alarm	Setting Setting					
0 Enable	Name	Similarity	Modify P	arameters	Delete	
		80	ľ	\$	ā	
2		80	ľ	\$	ā	
Default					Apply	Back

<u>Step 5</u> Configure the added face library.

- Click to modify the similarity. The lower the number is, the easier the alarm linkage will trigger.
- Click to delete the face library.
- Click to set the alarm linkage. For details, see Table 5-46.

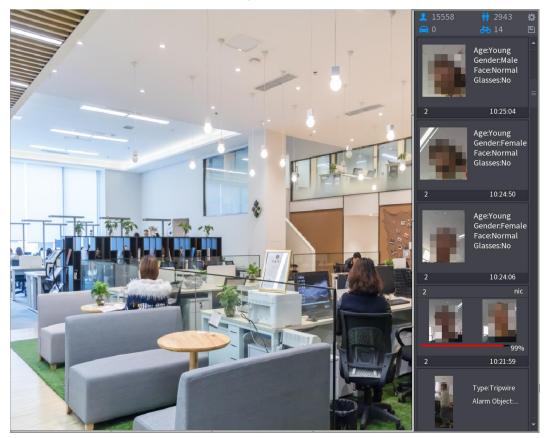
After setting is completed, click **OK**.

- <u>Step 6</u> (Optional) Enable the **Stranger Mode**.
  - Enable the Stranger mode (
     When the detected faces do not belong to the face library, the system remarks the face as "Stranger."
  - 2) Click Setting to set the alarm linkage. For details, see Table 5-46.
  - 3) After setting is completed, click **OK**.

<u>Step 7</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

After the face recognition function is enabled, right-click on the live view screen, and then select **Live Mode > AI Mode**. The AI mode live view screen is displayed. See Figure 5-158.

- If the detected face belongs to the enabled face library, the similarity result is displayed.
- If the detected face does not belong to the enabled face library, the face will be remarked as "Stranger."



### 5.11.1.2.3 Smart Search for Face Recognition

You can compare the detected faces with the face library and play back.

- Search by attributes: Search the face library by the face attributes.
- Search by picture: Search the face library by uploading face pictures.

# Searching by Attributes

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > AI > AI Search > Face Recognition > Search by Attributes. The Search by Attributes interface is displayed.

Figure 5-159

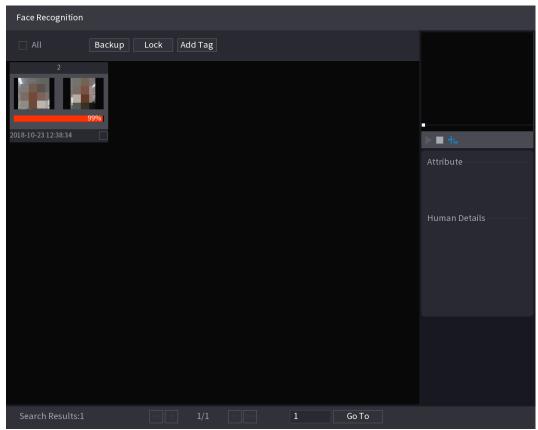
Search by Attri	Search by Picture	
Channel	1	
Start Time	2020 -03 -02	00:00:00
End Time	2020 -03 -03	00:00:00
Gender	All	
Age	All	
Glasses	All	
Beard	All	
Mouth Mask	All	
Expression	All	
Similarity	80	
	Smart Searc	n

<u>Step 2</u> Select the channel and set the parameters such as start time, end time, gender, age, glasses, beard, mask, and similarity according to your requirement.

#### Step 3 Click Smart Search.

The search result is displayed.





<u>Step 4</u> Click the picture that you want to play back. The picture with registered information is displayed. Figure 5-161

Face Recognition						
All Backup	Lock Add Tag					
2 9996 2018-10-23 12:38:34					<ul> <li>↓</li> <li>↓</li> </ul>	
					Glasses:No Fa	s ender:Fe ace:Confused ask:No
					Person Details Name:nic Birthday: Gender:Male ID Type: ID No.: Country:	
Search Results:1	<< < 1/1	> >>	1	Go To		

Step 5 Click to play back the recorded video.

## Double-click on the playing interface to switch between full screen playing and thumbnail playing.

You can also do the following operations to the recorded files.

- To export the database file (.csv) to the external storage device, select files, click • **Export**, and then select the save path.
- To back up the recorded files to the external storage device, select files, click • Backup, select the save path and file type, and then click Start.

File Backup						
Device Name	sdb1(USB USB)			14.92 GB/14.93 GB(Free/Total)		
Path	XVR/2018	3-10-23/		Browse		
🔽 Video	🗌 Pictu	re		File Type	DAV	
1 ⊽Cha	Туре	Start Time	End Tim	e	Size(KB)	
1 √2		2018-10-23 12:38:25	2018-10-	23 12:38:44	4890	
6.48 MB(Space	Needed)					Start

- To lock the files to make it unable to be overwritten, select the files, and then click Lock.
- To add a mark to the file, select the files and then click Add Tag.

## Search by Picture

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > AI > AI Search > Face Recognition > Search by Picture. The Search by Picture interface is displayed.

Search by Attri Sea	rch by Picture		
Face Database	Local Upload Note: Upload	l max 30 pictures.	Remove 0/0
•			•
Channel	1		
Start Time	2020-03-01 00:00:00		
End Time	2020-03-02 00:00:00		
Similarity	80	% (50%~100%)	
	Smart Search		

Figure 5-163

<u>Step 2</u> Upload face pictures from Face Database or Local Upload.

Maximum 30 pictures can be uploaded at one time, and the system support searching 8 pictures at one time.

• Face Database

### 1) Click Face Database.

The Face Database interface is displayed.

Figure 5-164

Face Database				-
Face All 🔹 Name	Gender All	▼ Crede	Res	et Search
Name:nic Gender:Male ID No.:				
	<< < 1/1	> >> 1	Goto	ОК

- 2) Set the searching parameters by selecting the face library and gender, and entering name and ID No. according to your actual requirement.
- 3) Click **Search** to display the results that satisfy the requirement.

Click Reset to clear the searching parameters.

4) Select the picture and then click **OK**.

The picture is displayed on the Search by Picture interface.

Figure 5-165

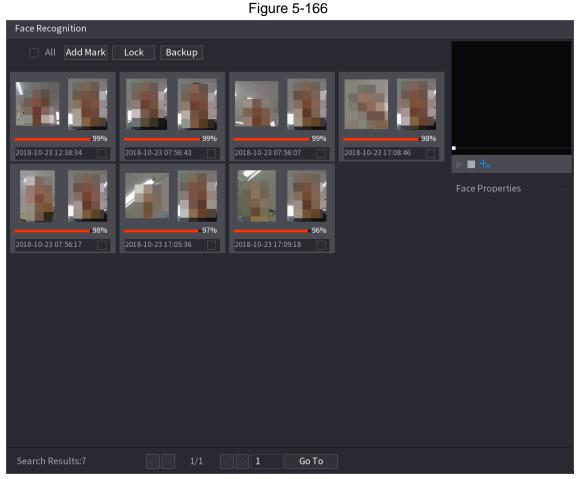
Search by Attri Sear	ch by Picture		
Face Database	Local Upload Note: Upload	max 30 pictures.	Remove 0/0
•			۲
Channel	1 *		
Start Time	2020-03-01 00:00:00		
End Time	2020-03-02 00:00:00		
Similarity	80	% (50%~100%)	
	Smart Search		

Local Upload

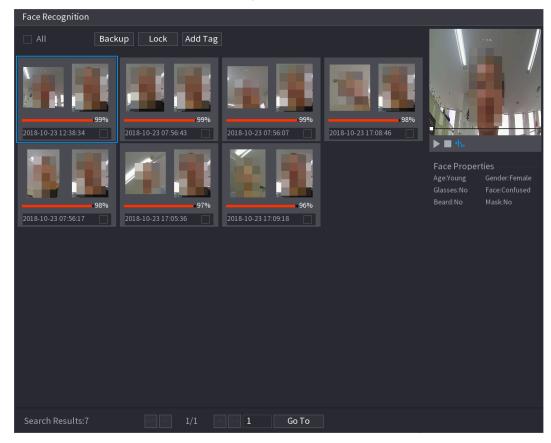
Plug the USB storage device (with face pictures) to the Device, and then click **Local Upload**. Then select the picture from the USB storage device, and then click **OK**. The selected face pictures are uploaded.

- <u>Step 3</u> After the face pictures are uploaded, continue to configure other parameters (channel, start time, end time, and similarity).
- Step 4 Click Smart Search.

The searching results are displayed.



<u>Step 5</u> Select the face picture that you want to play back.



Step 6 Click log to play back the recorded video.

#### $\square$

Double-click on the playing interface to switch between full screen playing and thumbnail playing.

You can also do the following operations to the recorded files.

- To add a mark to the file, select the files and then click Add Tag.
- To lock the files to make it unable to be overwritten, select the files, and then click Lock.
- To back up the recorded files to the external storage device, select files, click **Backup**, select the save path and file type, and then click **Start**.

File Backup						
Device Name Path		sdb1(USB USB)			1.93 GB(Free/1	Fotal)
	Pictu	re		File Type	DAV	
1 .√ Cha	. Туре	Start Time	End Tim	e	Size(KB)	
1 12		2018-10-23 12:38:25	2018-10-	23 12:38:44	4890	
6.48 MB(Space N	leeded)					Start

Figure 5-168

## 5.11.1.3 IVS Function

The IVS function processes and analyzes the images to extract the key information to match with the preset rules. When the detected behaviors match with the rules, the system activates alarms.

If you select AI by device, then among face detection and recognition, IVS function, and video structuring, you can use one of them at the same time for the same channel.

#### 5.11.1.3.1 Configuring IVS Parameters

The alarms are generated according to the configured parameters.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > AI > Parameters > IVS.

The **IVS** interface is displayed.

Channel
I

O
Enable

Name
Type

Draw
Trigger

Delete

P

- <u>Step 2</u> In the **Channel** list, select the channel number that you want to configure the IVS function.
- Step 3 At Type, you can select from AI by Camera and AI by Device.
  - Al by Camera: This option requires certain Al cameras. The camera will do all the Al analysis, and then give the results to the DVR.

Apply

Back

• Al by Device: The camera only transmits normal video stream to the DVR, and then the DVR will do all the Al analysis.

## Step 4 Click Add.

Default

One line of rule is displayed.

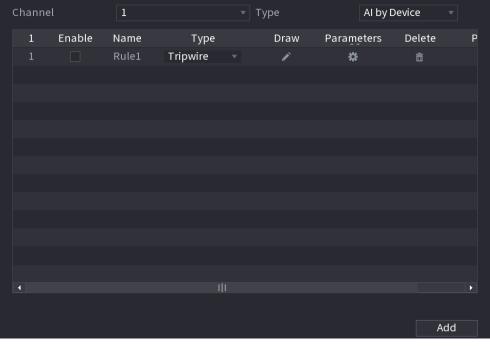


Figure 5-170

<u>Step 5</u> Configure the parameters for the rule that you selected.

Step 6 Select the check box of the rule to enable it.

Step 7 Click Apply to complete the settings.

# **Configuring Tripwire Rules**

When the target object crosses the tripwire in the defined direction, the system activates alarms.

- The tripwire can be configured as a straight line or broken line.
- Supports detecting one-way or two-way tripwire crossing.
- Supports multiple tripwires in the same scenario to meet the complexity.
- Supports size filtering for target.
- <u>Step 1</u> On the rule line that you added, in the **Type** list, select **Tripwire**.

Figure	5-171
--------	-------

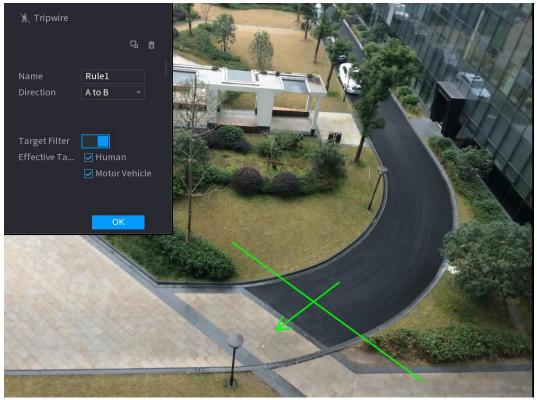
С	hanne	l	1		▼	Туре		Al by Devic	e 🔻	
	1	Enable	Name	Туре		Draw	Parame	ters D	elete	Ρ
			Rule1	Tripwire		ľ	\$		<u>ش</u>	
11										
10										
	1									Þ
									Add	

Step 2 Draw a tripwire.

- 1) In the **Channel** list, select the channel that you want to configure the rules for.
- 2) Click

The monitoring screen to configure the tripwire rules is displayed.

Figure 5-172



3) Configure the settings for the parameters of drawing rules.

Table 5-48

Parameter	Description
Name	Enter the customized rule name.
Direction	Set the direction of the tripwire. You can choose <b>A to B</b> (left to
Direction	right), <b>B to A</b> (right to left), and <b>Both</b> .
	Click <b>B</b> to draw areas to filter the target.
	You can configure two filtering targets (maximum size and
Target Filter	minimum size). When the target that is crossing the tripwire is
	smaller than the minimum size or larger than the maximum size, no
	alarms will be activated. The maximum size should be larger than
	the minimum size.
Effective Target	Enable the AI Recognition function (
Lifective larget	Motor Vehicle are selected for alarm object.

4) Drag to draw a tripwire. The tripwire can be a straight line, broken line or polygon.

5) Click **OK** to save the settings.

Step 3 Click to set the actions to be triggered.

The Trigger interface is displayed.

Trigger					
Schedule	Setting				
Alarm-out Port	Setting		Post-Alarm	10	sec.
Show Message	🛃 Report Alarm		🗌 Send Email		
🛃 Record Channel					
PTZ Linkage	Setting		Post-Record	10	sec.
🗌 Tour					
Picture Storage					
Sub Screen	Buzzer	✓ Log			
🗌 Alarm Tone	None				
White Light	Siren				
				OK	Back

<u>Step 4</u> Configure the triggering parameters.

Table	5-49
-------	------

Parameter	Description				
	Define a period during which the detection is active.				
Schedule	For details, see "Setting Motion Detection Period" section in				
	"5.10.4.1 Configuring Motion Detection Settings."				
	Click <b>Setting</b> to display setting interface.				
	General Alarm: Enable general alarm and select the alarm				
	output port.				
	• Ext. Alarm: Connect the alarm box to the Device and then				
Alarm-out Port	enable it.				
	Wireless Siren: Connect the wireless gateway to the Device				
	and then enable it. For details, see "5.12 IoT Function."				
	When an alarm event occurs, the system links the peripheral alarm				
	devices connected to the selected output port.				
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after				
Post-Alarm	the external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 0 seconds				
	to 300 seconds. If you enter 0, there will be no delay.				
Show Message	Select the Show Message check box to enable a pop-up alarm				
Show Message	message in your local host PC.				
	Select the Report Alarm check box to enable the system to upload				
	the alarm signal to the network (including alarm center) when an				
	alarm event occurs.				
Depart Alarm					
Report Alarm	<ul> <li>Not all models support this function.</li> </ul>				
	• The corresponding parameters in the alarm center should be				
	configured. For details, see "5.15.1.12 Configuring Alarm				
	Center Settings."				

Parameter	Description
	Select the Send Email check box to enable the system to send an
Send Email	email notification when an alarm event occurs.
	To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in
	Main Menu > NETWORK > EMAIL.
	Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected
Record Channel	channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs.
Record Channel	The recording for intelligence event and auto recording function
	must be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded
	Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."
	Click <b>Setting</b> to display the PTZ interface.
	Enable PTZ linkage actions, such as selecting the preset that you
DT7 Linkogo	want to be called when an alarm event occurs.
PTZ Linkage	
	To use this function, the PTZ operations must be configured. For
	details, see "5.4 Controlling PTZ Cameras."
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording
Post-Record	after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to
	300 seconds.
	Select the <b>Tour</b> check box to enable a tour of the selected
	channels.
Tour	
	• To use this function, the tour setting must be configured.
	• After the tour is ended, the live view screen returns to the view
	layout before tour started.
	Select the <b>Picture Storage</b> check box to take a snapshot of the
	selected channel.
Picture Storage	
	To use this function, make sure the snapshot function is enabled
	for Intel in Main Menu > STORAGE > Schedule > Picture
	Storage. Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event
	occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in
	"Main Menu > DISPLAY > Tour > Sub Screen."
Video Matrix	
	<ul> <li>Not all models support this function.</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Not all models support this function.</li> <li>The extra screen must be enabled to support this function.</li> </ul>
Buzzer	Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.
	Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm
Log	log.
	Select to enable audio broadcast in response to a face detection
Alarm Tone	event.
Step 5 Click <b>OK</b> to	

 $\underline{Step 5}$  Click **OK** to save the settings.

<u>Step 6</u> Select the **Enable** check box, and then click **Apply**.

The tripwire detecting function is active. When the target object crosses the tripwire in the defined direction, the system activates alarms.

# **Configuring Intrusion Rules**

When the target enters and leaves the defined detection area, or the target appears in the defined area, the system activates alarms.

- You can define the shape and quantity of intrusion areas.
- Supports detecting the behaviors that enter and leave the intrusion areas.
- Supports detecting the behaviors that are moving in the intrusion areas. The quantity of areas and lasting time can be configured.
- Supports size filtering for target.

<u>Step 1</u> On the rule line that you added, in the **Type** list, select **Intrusion**.

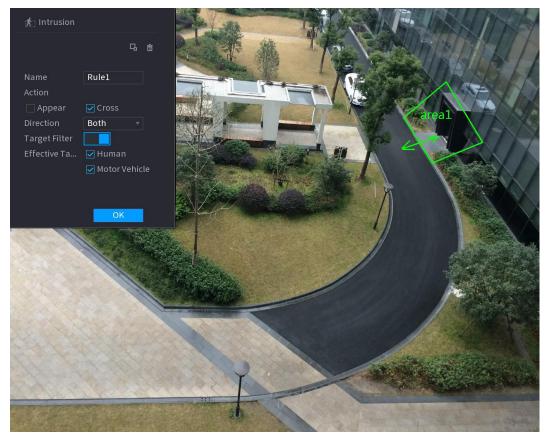
Chann	el	2			Туре		AI by De	evice	
1	Enable	Name	Туре		Draw	Paramet	ters	Delete	Р
1			Intrusion	•		\$			
•									▶
									٩dd

Figure 5-174

Step 2 Draw an area.

- 1) In the **Channel** list, select the channel that you want to configure the rules for.
- 2) Click

The monitoring screen to configure the intrusion rules is displayed.



3) Configure the settings for the parameters of drawing rules.

#### Table 5-50

Parameter	Description
Name	Enter the customized rule name.
Action	Configure the actions that are defined as intrusion. You can select
ACION	the Appear check box and the Cross check box.
Direction	In the <b>Direction</b> list, select the direction of crossing the configured
Direction	area. You can select Enter&Exit, Enter, and Exit.
Target Filter	Click to draw areas to filter the target. You can configure two filtering targets (maximum size and minimum size). When the target that is crossing the tripwire is smaller than the minimum size or larger than the maximum size, no alarms will be activated. The maximum size should be larger than the minimum size.
Effective Target	Enable the AI Recognition function ( <b>D</b> ). By default, <b>Human</b> and <b>Motor Vehicle</b> are selected for alarm object.

- 4) Drag to draw an area.
- 5) Click **OK** to save the settings.
- Step 3 Click to set the actions to be triggered. For details, see Table 5-49.
- <u>Step 4</u> Select the **Enable** check box, and then click **Apply**.

The intrusion detecting function is active. When the target enters and leaves the area, or the target appears in the defined area, the system activates alarms.

### 5.11.1.3.2 Smart Search for IVS Function

You can search for the intelligent events and play back.

- <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > AI > SMART SEARCH > IVS.
  - The **IVS** interface is displayed.

	Figure 5-176
Channel	-
Start Time	2020 - 03 - 02 00 : 00 : 00
End Time	2020-03-03 00:00:00
Event Type	All
Effective Target	🗌 Human 🗌 Motor Vehicle
	Smart Search

- <u>Step 2</u> In the **Channel** list, select the channel that you want to search for the events, and then set other parameters such as start time, end time, event type, and alarm object.
- Step 3 Click Smart Search.

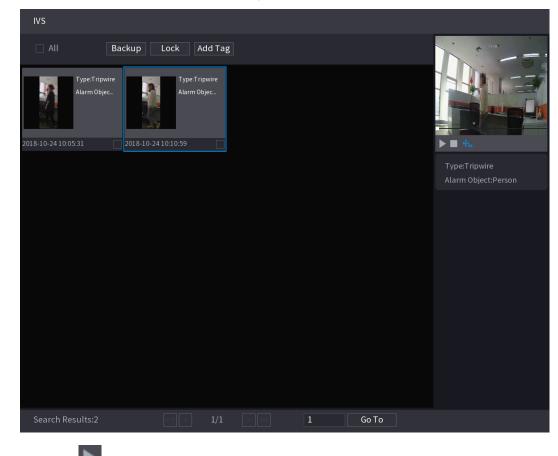
The results that satisfy the searching conditions are displayed.

Figure 5-177

IVS			
All Backup	Lock Add Tag		
Type:Tripwire Alarm Objec	Type:Tripwire Alarm Objec		
2018-10-24 10:05:31 2018-10-2	24 10:10:59		▶ 🔳 🕂₀
Search Results:2		1 Go To	

<u>Step 4</u> Click the picture that you want to play back.

Figure 5-178



<u>Step 5</u> Click to play back the recorded video.

Double-click on the playing interface to switch between full screen playing and thumbnail playing.

You can also do the following operations to the recorded files.

• To back up the recorded files to the external storage device, select files, click **Backup**, select the save path and file type, and then click **Start**.

Figure 5-179

Fil	File Backup							
	Device	Name	sdb1(US	B USB)	▼ 14.92	2 GB/14	1.93 GB(Free/1	<sup>-</sup> otal)
	Path		XVR/2018	3-10-23/	Br	rowse		
	🔽 Vi	deo	Pictu	re	File	Гуре	DAV	
	1	√ Cha	Туре	Start Time	End Time		Size(KB)	
		J 2		2018-10-23 12:38:25	2018-10-23 12	:38:44	4890	
	6.48 M	B(Space I	Veeded)					Start

- To lock the files to make it unable to be overwritten, select the files, and then click **Lock**.
- To add a mark to the file, select the files and then click Add Tag.

# 5.11.1.4 Video Structuring

The device can detect and extract key features from the human bodies and non-motor vehicles in the video, and then build a structured database. You can search any target you need with these features.

#### 5.11.1.4.1 Configuring Video Structuring

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > Al > Parameters > Video Structuring. The Video Structuring interface is displayed.

Figure 5-180

Channel 1	<ul> <li>AI by Device</li> </ul>	•
Human Detection	Face Detect	
Non-motor Vehicle		

<u>Step 2</u> In the **Channel** list, select a channel that you want to configure video structuring function, and then enable it.

- Step 3 At Type, you can select from AI by Camera and AI by Device.
  - Al by Camera: This option requires certain Al cameras. The camera will do all the Al analysis, and then give the results to the DVR.
  - Al by Device: The camera only transmits normal video stream to the DVR, and then the DVR will do all the Al analysis.

## <u>Step 4</u> You can select from Human Detection, Face Detect, and Non-motor Vehicle.

- Human Detection: Select this option, and then the device will analyze all the human body features in the video, including Top, Top Color, Bottom, Bottom Color, Hat, Bag, Gender, Age, and Umbrella. You can search the target you need with these features. See "Human Body Detection" in "5.11.1.4.2 Smart Search for Video Structuring."
- Face Detect: You need to select Human Detection first, and then you can select this option. If you select this option, and there is any human face appears in the video, then there will be an extra face image and some extra face features in the human body detection results, including Glasses, Expression, Mask, and Beard. You can search the target you need with these features. See "Human Body Detection" in "5.11.1.4.2 Smart Search for Video Structuring."
- Non-motor Vehicle: Select this option, and then the device will analyze all the non-motor vehicle features in the video, including Type, Vehicle Color, People Number, and Helmet. You can search the target you need with these features. See "Non-motor Vehicle Detection" in "5.11.1.4.2 Smart Search for Video Structuring."

Step 5 Click Apply.

## 5.11.1.4.2 Smart Search for Video Structuring

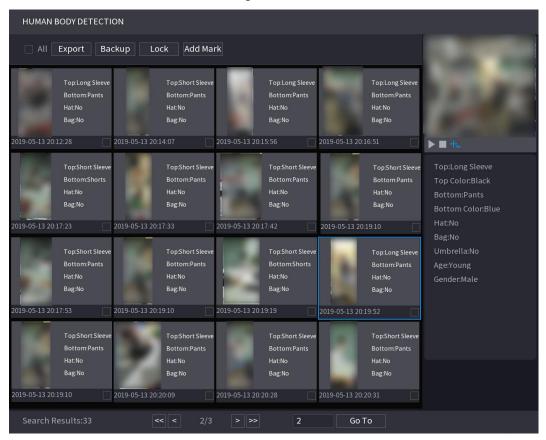
You can search the target you need with human body features or non-motor vehicle features Human Body Detection

## <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > AI > SMART SEARCH > Human Body Detection.

The Human Body Detection interface is displayed.

Figure 5-181						
Channel	1					
Start Time	2019 - 05 - 13	00 : 00 : 00				
End Time	2019 - 05 - 13	23:59:59				
Тор	All					
Top Color	All					
Bottom	All					
Bottom Color	All					
Hat	All					
Bag	All					
Gender	All					
Age	All					
Umbrella	All					
	Smart Se					

- <u>Step 2</u> Select the channel and the time, and then select one or multiple features from **Top**, **Top Color**, **Bottom**, **Bottom Color**, **Hat**, **Bag**, **Gender**, **Age**, or **Umbrella**.
- Step 3 Click Smart Search. The search result is displayed.
  - If you only selected **Human Body Detection** and did not select **Face Detection** in "5.11.1.4.1 Configuring Video Structuring", there will be only human body features displayed in the results.



 If you selected Human Body Detection and Face Detection in "5.11.1.4.1 Configuring Video Structuring", and there is any human face appears in the video, there will be extra face features displayed in the results.

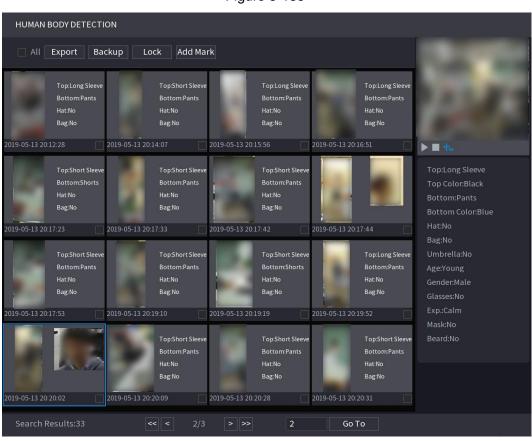


Figure 5-183

#### <u>Step 4</u> Select one or multiple results, and then you can

- Click Export to export them to the USB device
- Click **Backup** to make backup in the DVR
- Click Lock so that they don't get overwritten or deleted
- Click Add Tag to name them as needed.

#### **Non-motor Vehicle Detection**

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > AI > AI Search > Non-motor Vehicle Detection.

The Non-motor Vehicle Detection interface is displayed.

Channel	1		
Start Time	2019 -05 -13	00:00:00	
End Time	2019 - 05 - 13	23:59:59	
Туре	All		
Vehicle Color	All		
People Number	All		
Helmet	All		
	Smart Se		

- <u>Step 2</u> Select the channel and the time, and then select one or multiple features from **Type**, **Vehicle Color**, **People Number**, or **Helmet**.
- Step 3 Click Smart Search.

The search result is displayed.



NON-MOTOR VEHICLE	DETECTION			
All Export Ba	ckup Lock Add Mar	'k		
Vehicle Color:Blue Type:Two-wheeL. People Number:1 Helmet:Yes	Vehicle Color/White Type:Two-wheet People Number:1 Helmet:Yes	Vehicle Color:Blue Type:Two-wheeL People Number:1 Helmet:Yes	Vehicle Color:Blue Type:Two-wheel People Number:1 Helmet:Yes	
2019-05-15 20:18:19	2019-05-15 20:19:05	2019-05-15 20:19:28	2019-05-15 20:20:14	▶ ■ ₦₀
Vehicle Color:White Type:Two-wheel People Number:1 Helmet:Yes	Vehicle Color:Blue Type:Two-wheeL People Number:1 Helmet:Yes	Vehicle Color:Blue Type:Two-wheeL People Number:1 Helmet:Yes	Vehicle Color:White Type:Two-wheeL People Number:1 Helmet:Yes	Type:Two-wheeled Ve Vehicle Color:Blue People Number:1 Helmet:Yes
2019-05-15 20:20:59	2019-05-15 20:21:24	2019-05-15 20:22:08	2019-05-15 20:22:54	
Vehicle Color:Blue Type:Two-wheeL People Number:1 Helmet:Yes	Vehicle Color.Blue Type:Two-wheeL People Number.1 Heimet.Yes	Vehicle Color:White Type:Two-wheeL People Number:1 Helmet:Yes	Vehicle Color:Blue Type:Two-wheeL People Number:1 Helmet:Yes	
2019-05-15 20:23:18	2019-05-15 20:24:03	2019-05-15 20:24:48	2019-05-15 20:25:11	
Vehicle Color.Blue Type:Two-wheel People Number:1 Helmet.Yes 2019-05-15 20:25:56	Vehicle Color:White Type:Two-wheeL People Number:1 HelmetYes	Vehicle Color.Blue Type:Two-wheel People Number:1 Helmet:Yes	Vehicle Color.Blue Type:Two-wheel People Number:1 Helmet:Yes	
Search Results:184	1/12	> >> 1	Go To	

Step 4 Select one or multiple results, and then you can

- Click Export to export them to the USB device
- Click **Backup** to make backup in the DVR

- Click Lock so that they don't get overwritten or deleted
- Click Add Tag to name them as needed.

# 5.11.2 For Lite AI Series

AI module provides SMD (Smart Motion Detection) and IVS functions. These functions take effect after they are configured and enabled. It adopts deep learning and can realize precision alarms. You can only enable one of them to the same channel at the same time.

- SMD: The device can detect and classify humans and vehicles in the image.
- IVS: The IVS function processes and analyzes the human and vehicle images to extract the key information to match with the preset rules. When the detected behaviors match with the rules, the system activates alarms. The IVS function can avoid wrong alarms by filtering the factors such as rains, light, and animals.
- Face detection: The Device can analyze the faces captured by the camera and link the configured alarms. This function is available for XVR5X-I and XVR 7X-I series only.
- Face recognition: The Device can compare the captured faces with the face library and then link the configured alarms. This function is available for XVR 7X-I series only.

Ш

SMD, face detection, face recognition and IVS cannot be enabled simultaneously on select models. For details, see 5.1.4.2 Configuring General Settings.

## 5.11.2.1 SMD

The device can detect and classify humans and vehicles in the image.

#### 5.11.2.1.1 Configuring SMD Parameters

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > Al > Parameters > SMD.

The **SMD** interface is displayed.

	Tigate e Te		
Channel	1 •		
Enable			
Sensitivity	Medium 👻		
Effective Target	🗹 Human	🗹 Motor Vehicle	
Schedule	Setting	Anti-Dither	5 sec.
Alarm-out Port	Setting	Post-Alarm	10 sec.
Show Message	🗌 Report Alarm	🗌 Send Email	
🖌 Record Channel	Setting		
🗌 PTZ Linkage	Setting	Post-Record	10 sec.
🗌 Tour	Setting	Picture Storage	Setting
Sub Screen	Buzzer Log		
🗌 Alarm Tone	None 🔻		
White Light	Siren		
SMD linkage configura	tion synchronizes with MD	inkage configuration.	

Figure 5-186

- <u>Step 2</u> In the **Channel** list, select a channel that you want to configure face detection function, and then enable it.
- <u>Step 3</u> Configure the parameters.

Table 5-51
------------

Devenueter	Table 5-51					
Parameter	Description					
Channel	In the <b>Channel</b> list, select a channel to set the motion detection.					
Enable	Enable or disable the motion detection function.					
Sensitivity	Set the sensitivity for smart motion detection.					
Effective Target	Select human or motor vehicle or both.					
Schedule	Define a period during which the motion detection is active.					
Anti-Dither	Configure the time period from end of event detection to the stop of alarm.					
	Click Setting to display setting interface.					
	• General Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the alarm					
	devices connected to the selected output port.					
Alarm-out Port	• External Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the connected alarm box.					
	• Wireless Siren: Enable alarm activation through devices connected by USB gateway or camera gateway.					
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after					
De et Alerre	the external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 0 seconds					
Post-Alarm	to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds. If you enter 0,					
	there will be no delay.					
Show Maaaaaa	Select the <b>Show Message</b> check box to enable a pop-up message					
Show Message	in your local host PC.					
	Select the Report Alarm check box to enable the system to upload					
Report Alarm	the alarm signal to the network (including alarm center) when an					
	alarm event occurs.					
	Select the Send Email check box to enable the system to send an					
Send Email	email notification when an alarm event occurs.					
	To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in					
	Main Menu > NETWORK > Email.					
	Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected					
Record Channel	channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs.					
	The recording for motion detection and auto recording function					
	must be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded					
	Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."					
	Click <b>Setting</b> to display the PTZ interface.					
	Enable PTZ linkage actions, such as selecting the preset that you					
PTZ Linkage	want to be called when an alarm event occurs.					
I I Z LIIKAYE	$\square$					
	Motion Detect can only activate PTZ preset.					

Parameter	Description			
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording			
Post Record	after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to			
	300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.			
Tour	Select the Tour check box to enable a tour of the selected			
TOUT	channels.			
	Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected			
	channel.			
Picture Storage				
	To use this function, select Main Menu > CAMERA > Encode >			
	Snapshot, in the Type list, select Event.			
	Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event			
	occurs, the extra screen outputs the settings configured in Main			
Sub Screen	Menu > DISPLAY > Tour > Sub Screen.			
Sub Screen				
	<ul> <li>Not all models support this function.</li> </ul>			
	<ul> <li>To use this function, extra screen shall be enabled.</li> </ul>			
	Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event			
	occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in			
Video Matrix	Main Menu > DISPLAY > Tour.			
	Not all models support this function.			
Buzzer	Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.			
	Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm			
Log	log.			
	Select to enable audio broadcast/alarm tones in response to a			
Alarm Tone	motion detection event.			
White Light	Select the check box to enable white light alarm of the camera.			
Siren	Select the check box to enable sound alarm of the camera.			

<u>Step 4</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

## 5.11.2.1.2 Searching for SMD Reports

You can search the detection history by channel, object type, and time.

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > AI > AI Search > SMD.

The **SMD** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-187

Channel	All	•	Туре	All	•
Start Time	2020 - 03 - 02 00 : 00 : 00		End Time	2020 -03 -03	00:00:00
					Search

<u>Step 2</u> Select the channel, enter the start time and end time, and select the object type you need.

Step 3 Click Search.

The results are displayed.

# 5.11.2.2 Configuring IVS Function

The IVS function processes and analyzes the images to extract the key information to match with the preset rules. When the detected behaviors match with the rules, the system activates alarms.

#### 5.11.2.2.1 Configuring IVS Parameters

The alarms are generated according to the configured parameters.

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > AI > Parameters > IVS.

The **IVS** interface is displayed.

Channe	ι	1					
0	Enable	Name	Туре	Draw	Parameters	Delete	Ρ
•							
						Add	
						Auu	

Figure 5-188

You can enable the AI Mode, and then the detection accuracy would be improved, but the video stream quantity that the DVR can process will reduce.

<u>Step 2</u> In the **Channel** list, select the channel number that you want to configure the IVS function.

#### Step 3 Click Add.

One line of rule is displayed.

Figure 5-189

С	hanne	l	1		▼	Туре	AI by [	Device	▼
	1	Enable	Name	Туре		Draw	Parameters	Delete	Р
			Rule1	Tripwire		<b>J</b>	\$	ā	
۰.									
1.									
1									
	1				1				Þ
								A	dd

<u>Step 4</u> Configure the parameters for the rule that you selected.

<u>Step 5</u> Select the check box of the rule to enable it.

<u>Step 6</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

## **Configuring Tripwire Rules**

When the target object crosses the tripwire in the defined direction, the system activates alarms.

- The tripwire can be configured as a straight line or broken line.
- Supports detecting one-way or two-way tripwire crossing.
- Supports multiple tripwires in the same scenario to meet the complexity.
- Supports size filtering for target.

<u>Step 1</u> On the rule line that you added, in the **Type** list, select **Tripwire**.

Figure 5-190

(	Channe	l	1		▼	Туре		AI by De	evice	▼	
	1	Enable	Name	Туре		Draw	Parame	eters	Delete		Р
			Rule1	Tripwire		ľ	\$		ā		
	•										Þ
									A	dd	
									A	dd	

#### Step 2 Draw a tripwire.

- 1) In the **Channel** list, select the channel that you want to configure the rules for.
- 2) Click .

The monitoring screen to configure the tripwire rules is displayed.



3) Configure the settings for the parameters of drawing rules.

Table 5-52

Parameter Description					
Name Enter the customized rule name.					
Direction		Set the direction of the tripwire. You can choose <b>A to B</b> (left to			
Direction		right), <b>B to A</b> (right to left), and <b>Both</b> .			
		Click <b>I</b> to draw areas to filter the target.			
		You can configure two filtering targets (maximum size and			
Target Filter		minimum size). When the target that is crossing the tripwire is			
		smaller than the minimum size or larger than the maximum size, no			
		alarms will be activated. The maximum size should be larger than			
		the minimum size.			
Effective Target		Enable the AI Recognition function (			
	JEI	Motor Vehicle are selected for alarm object.			
4)	Drag to	ag to draw a tripwire. The tripwire can be a straight line, broken line or polygo			
5)	Click <b>OK</b> to save the settings.				

Step 3 Click to set the actions to be triggered.

The Trigger interface is displayed.

Figure 5-192

Trigger				
Schedule	Setting			
Alarm-out Port	Setting	Post-Alarm	10	sec.
Show Message	🛃 Report Alarm	🗌 Send Email		
🛃 Record Channel				
PTZ Linkage	Setting	Post-Record	10	sec.
🗌 Tour				
Picture Storage				
Sub Screen	☐ Buzzer ✓Log			
🗌 Alarm Tone	None			
White Light	Siren			
			ОК	Back

<u>Step 4</u> Configure the triggering parameters.

Table 5-53

Parameter	Description
	Define a period during which the detection is active.
Schedule	For details, see "Setting Motion Detection Period" section in
	"5.10.4.1 Configuring Motion Detection Settings."

Parameter	Description
	Click <b>Setting</b> to display setting interface.
	General Alarm: Enable general alarm and select the alarm
	output port.
	• Ext. Alarm: Connect the alarm box to the Device and then
Alarm-out Port	enable it.
	Wireless Siren: Connect the wireless gateway to the Device and
	then enable it. For details, see "5.12 IoT Function."
	When an alarm event occurs, the system links the peripheral alarm
	devices connected to the selected output port.
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after
Post-Alarm	the external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 0 seconds
	to 300 seconds. If you enter 0, there will be no delay.
Show Message	Select the <b>Show Message</b> check box to enable a pop-up alarm
	message in your local host PC.
	Select the <b>Report Alarm</b> check box to enable the system to upload
	the alarm signal to the network (including alarm center) when an
	alarm event occurs.
Report Alarm	
	Not all models support this function.
	• The corresponding parameters in the alarm center should be
	configured. For details, see "5.15.1.12 Configuring Alarm Center Settings."
	Select the <b>Send Email</b> check box to enable the system to send an
	email notification when an alarm event occurs.
Send Email	
	To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in
	Main Menu > NETWORK > Email.
	Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected
	channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs.
Record Channel	The recording for intelligence event and auto recording function
	must be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded
	Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."
	Click Setting to display the PTZ interface.
	Enable PTZ linkage actions, such as selecting the preset that you
PTZ Linkage	want to be called when an alarm event occurs.
	To use this function, the PTZ operations must be configured. For
	details, see "5.4 Controlling PTZ Cameras."
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording
Post-Record	after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to
	300 seconds.

Description
Select the <b>Tour</b> check box to enable a tour of the selected
channels.
• To use this function, the tour setting must be configured.
• After the tour is ended, the live view screen returns to the view
layout before tour started.
Select the <b>Snapshot</b> check box to take a snapshot of the selected
channel.
To use this function, make sure the snapshot function is enabled
for Intel in Main Menu > STORAGE > Schedule > Snapshot.
Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event
occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in
"Main Menu > DISPLAY > Tour > Sub Screen."
<ul> <li>Not all models support this function.</li> </ul>
• The extra screen must be enabled to support this function.
Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.
Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm
log.
Select to enable audio broadcast in response to a face detection
event.

<u>Step 5</u> Click **OK** to save the settings.

Step 6 Select the Enable check box, and then click Apply.

The tripwire detecting function is active. When the target object crosses the tripwire in the defined direction, the system activates alarms.

### **Configuring Intrusion Rules**

When the target enters and leaves the defined detection area, or the target appears in the defined area, the system activates alarms.

- You can define the shape and quantity of intrusion areas.
- Supports detecting the behaviors that enter and leave the intrusion areas.
- Supports detecting the behaviors that are moving in the intrusion areas. The quantity of areas and lasting time can be configured.
- Supports size filtering for target.
- <u>Step 1</u> On the rule line that you added, in the **Type** list, select **Intrusion**.

Chann	el	2			Туре		Al by Device		
1	Enable	Name	Туре		Draw	Paramete	rs Delete	è	Ρ
1			Intrusion	•		\$			
•									►
								Add	

Step 2 Draw an area.

- 1) In the **Channel** list, select the channel that you want to configure the rules for.
- 2) Click

# The monitoring screen to configure the intrusion rules is displayed.

Figure 5-194



3) Configure the settings for the parameters of drawing rules.

Table 5-54

Parameter	Description		
Name	Enter the customized rule name.		
Action	Configure the actions that are defined as intrusion. You can select		
ACIION	the Appear check box and the Cross check box.		
Direction	In the <b>Direction</b> list, select the direction of crossing the configured		
Direction	area. You can select Enter&Exit, Enter, and Exit.		
	Click <b>L</b> to draw areas to filter the target.		
Target Filter	You can configure two filtering targets (maximum size and		
larger i nei	minimum size). When the target that is crossing the tripwire is		
	smaller than the minimum size or larger than the maximum size,		
	no alarms will be activated. The maximum size should be larger		
	than the minimum size.		
Effective Target	Enable the AI Recognition function (		
Effective Target	Motor Vehicle are selected for alarm object.		
4) Drag to	draw an area.		
5) Click <b>O</b>	OK to save the settings.		

Step 3 Click to set the actions to be triggered. For details, see Table 5-53.

Step 4 Select the Enable check box, and then click Apply.

The intrusion detecting function is active. When the target enters and leaves the area, or the target appears in the defined area, the system activates alarms.

#### 5.11.2.2.2 Smart Search for IVS Function

You can search for the intelligent events and play back.

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > AI > AI Search > IVS.

The **IVS** interface is displayed.

	•	
Channel	1	•
Start Time	2020 - 03 - 02	00:00:00
End Time	2020 - 03 - 03	00:00:00
Event Type	All	•
Effective Target	🗌 Human 🗌	] Motor Vehicle
	Smart Search	]

Figure 5-195

<u>Step 2</u> In the **Channel** list, select the channel that you want to search for the events, and then set other parameters such as start time, end time, event type, and alarm object.

#### Step 3 Click Smart Search.

The results that satisfy the searching conditions are displayed.

	F	igure 5-196		
IVS				
All Backup	Lock Add Tag			
Type:Tripwire Alarm Objec	Type:Tripwire Alarm Objec			
2018-10-24 10:05:31	24 10:10:59			▶ ■ ♣
Search Results:2	<< < 1/1 >	2>> 1	Go To	

<u>Step 4</u> Click the picture that you want to play back.

Local Configurations 205

Figure 5-197

IVS			
All Backup	Lock Add Tag		
Type:Tripwire Alarm Objec	Type:Tripwire Alarm Objec		
2018-10-2410:05:31	24 10:10:59		▶ ■ ₦₀
			Type:Tripwire Alarm Object:Person
Search Results:2	<< < 1/1 >>>	1 Go To	

Step 5 Click to play back the recorded video.

### 

Double-click on the playing interface to switch between full screen playing and thumbnail playing.

You can also do the following operations to the recorded files.

• To back up the recorded files to the external storage device, select files, click **Backup**, select the save path and file type, and then click **Start**.

Figure 5-198

ile Backup					
Device Name	e sdb1(US	B USB)	▼ 14.92 GB/14	4.93 GB(Free/T	otal)
Path	XVR/201	8-10-23/	Browse		
🗹 Video	🗌 Pictu	ire	File Type	DAV	
1 √C	ha Type	Start Time	End Time	Size(KB)	
1 72		2018-10-23 12:38:25	2018-10-23 12:38:44	4890	
6.48 MB(Spa	ce Needed)				Start

- To lock the files to make it unable to be overwritten, select the files, and then click **Lock**.
- To add a mark to the file, select the files and then click Add Tag.

## 5.11.2.3 Face Detection (For XVR5X-I and XVR7X-I series only)

Some series of devices can analyze the pictures captured by the camera to detect whether the faces are on the pictures. You can search and filter the recorded videos the faces and play back.

 $\square$ 

If you select AI by device, then among face detection and recognition, IVS function, you can use one of them at the same time for the same channel.

#### 5.11.2.3.1 Configuring Face Detection Parameters

The alarms are generated according to the configured parameters.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > AI > Parameters > Face Detection.

#### The Face Detection interface is displayed.

Figure 5-199

Channel	1			
Enable		Rule	View Settin	g
Schedule	Setting			
Alarm-out Port	Setting	Post-Alarm	10	sec.
Show Message	🗹 Report Alarm	🗌 Send Email		
🗹 Record Channel				
PTZ Linkage	Setting	Post-Record	10	sec.
🗌 Tour				
Picture Storage				
Sub Screen	☐ Buzzer ✓ Log			
🗌 Alarm Tone	None			
White Light	Siren			

<u>Step 2</u> In the **Channel** list, select a channel that you want to configure face detection function, and then enable it.

<u>Step 3</u> Configure the parameters.

Table 5	5-55
---------	------

Parameter	Description
	Click <b>View Setting</b> to draw areas to filter the target.
Rule	You can configure two filtering targets (maximum size and
	minimum size). When the target is smaller than the minimum size
	or larger than the maximum size, no alarms will be activated. The
	maximum size should be larger than the minimum size.
	Define a period during which the detection is active.
Schedule	For details, see "Setting Motion Detection Period" section in
	"5.10.4.1 Configuring Motion Detection Settings."
	Click Setting to display setting interface.
	General Alarm: Enable general alarm and select the alarm
	output port.
	• Ext. Alarm: Connect the alarm box to the Device and then
Alarm-out Port	enable it.
	Wireless Siren: Connect the wireless gateway to the Device
	and then enable it. For details, see "5.12 IoT Function."
	When an alarm event occurs, the system links the peripheral alarm
	devices connected to the selected output port.
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after
Post-Alarm	the external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 0 seconds
	to 300 seconds. If you enter 0, there will be no delay.
Show Message	Select the <b>Show Message</b> check box to enable a pop-up alarm
	message in your local host PC.
	Select the <b>Report Alarm</b> check box to enable the system to upload
	the alarm signal to the network (including alarm center) when an
	alarm event occurs.
Report Alarm	
	Not all models support this function.
	The corresponding parameters in the alarm center should be     applicately and the second secon
	configured. For details, see "5.15.1.12 Configuring Alarm
	Center Settings."
	Select the <b>Send Email</b> check box to enable the system to send an email notification when an alarm event occurs.
Send Email	
	To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in
	Main Menu > NETWORK > Email.
	Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected
	channel(s) starts recording after an alarm event occurs.
Record Channel	The recording for intelligence event and auto recording function
	must be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded
	Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."
	have otorage concade and o.o. r Enabling Record Control.

Parameter	Description
	Click <b>Setting</b> to display the PTZ interface.
	Enable PTZ linkage actions, such as selecting the preset that you
	want to be called when an alarm event occurs.
PTZ Linkage	
	To use this function, the PTZ operations must be configured. For
	details, see "5.4 Controlling PTZ Cameras."
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording
Post Record	after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to
	300 seconds.
	Select the <b>Tour</b> check box to enable a tour of the selected
	channels.
Tour	
1001	<ul> <li>To use this function, the tour setting must be configured."</li> </ul>
	• After the tour is ended, the live view screen returns to the view
	layout before tour started.
	Select the Picture Storage check box to take a snapshot of the
	selected channel.
Picture Storage	
	To use this function, make sure the snapshot function is enabled
	for Intel in Main Menu > STORAGE > Schedule > Snapshot.
	Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event
	occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in
Video Matrix	Main Menu > DISPLAY > TOUR > Extra Screen.
	<ul> <li>Not all models support this function.</li> </ul>
	• The extra screen must be enabled to support this function.
Buzzer	Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.
Log	Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm
LUY	log.
Alarm Tone	Select to enable audio broadcast in response to a face detection
	event.
White Light	Select the check box to enable the white light alarm of the camera.
Siren	Select the check box to enable the sound alarm of the camera.

<u>Step 4</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

### 5.11.2.3.2 Searching for and Playing Detected Faces

You can search the detected faces and play back.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > AI > AI Search > Face Detection.

The Face Detection interface is displayed.

Figure 5-200					
Channel	1				
Start Time	2020 -03 -02	00:00:00			
End Time	2020 - 03 - 03	00:00:00			
Gender	All				
Age	All				
Glasses	All				
Beard	All				
Mouth Mask	All				
Expression	All				
	Smart Search				

- <u>Step 2</u> Select the channel, enter the start time and end time, and set for the gender, age, glasses, beard, and mask.
- Step 3 Click Smart Search.

The results are displayed.

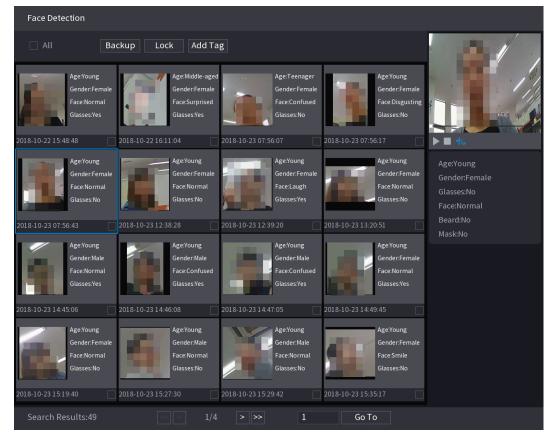
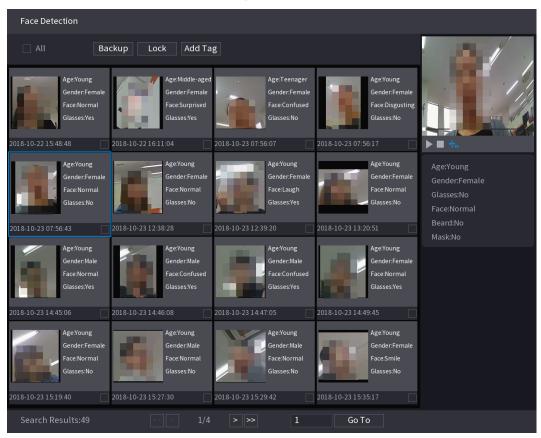


Figure 5-201

<u>Step 4</u> Select the face that you want to play back. The picture with registered information is displayed.

Figure 5-202



Step 5 And then click to start playing back the recorded detected face snapshots.

Double-click on the playing interface to switch between full screen playing and thumbnail playing.

You can also do the following operations to the recorded files.

- To export the database file (.csv) to the external storage device, select files, click **Export**, and then select the save path.
- To back up the recorded files to the external storage device, select files, click **Backup**, select the save path and file type, and then click **Start**.

Fil	e Backu	р						
	Device Name		sdb1(USB USB)			14.92 GB/14.93 GB(Free/Total)		
	Path		XVR/2018	8-10-23/		Browse		
	🔽 Via	deo	Pictu			File Type	DAV	
	1	⊽ Cha	Туре	Start Time	End Tim	e	Size(KB)	
		√2		2018-10-23 12:38:25	2018-10-	23 12:38:44	4890	
	6.48 ME	B(Space N	leeded)					Start

- To lock the files to make it unable to be overwritten, select the files, and then click **Lock**.
- To add a mark to the file, select the files and then click Add Tag.

# 5.11.2.4 Face Recognition (For XVR7X-I series only)

Face recognition applies to AI preview mode and smart search.

- Al preview mode: Supports comparing the detected faces with the face library, and display the comparison results.
- Smart search: Supports faces searching by faces attributes or portraits.

- If you select AI by device, then among face detection and recognition, IVS function, you can use one of them at the same time for the same channel.
- Before enabling face recognition function for a channel, the face detection must be enabled first for this channel.

#### 5.11.2.4.1 Face Library Management

You should create a face library for comparing the detected faces and the faces in the library. The Device supports creating maximum 20 libraries and registering 100,000 faces.

### Creating a Face Library

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > Al > Database > Face Database Config. The Face Database Config interface is displayed.

Figure 5-204

Ту	уре		Local						
	1		Name	Register No.	Failed No.	Error No.	Status	Modify	Details <sup>s</sup>
			vip				Arming	ø	Ê
	Mode	ing	Refresh				Ac	d	Delete

<u>Step 2</u> At **Type**, you can select **Local** or **Remote**.

- Local: Viewing the existing face databases or adding new one on the DVR.
- **Remote**: If you have face recognition camera, you can select this to view the existing face databases or adding new one on the camera.

#### Click Add.

The Add interface is displayed.

	Figu	ure 5-205	
Add			
Name			
		ОК	Back

- <u>Step 3</u> Enter the face library name, and then click **Save**. The created library is displayed.
  - Click to modify library name.

- Click to view the library details and add new faces to the library. For details, see "Adding Face Pictures."
- Select the library, and then click **Modeling**. The system will extract the attributes of face pictures in the library for the future comparison.
- Select the library, and then click **Delete** to delete the library. Figure 5-206

Т	Гуре		Local						
	1		Name	Register No.	Failed No.	Error No.	Status I	Modify	Details <sup>ş</sup>
			vip				Arming	ľ	Ē
	Mode	ling	Refresh				Ad	d	Delete

### **Adding Face Pictures**

You can add face pictures to the existing libraries one by one or by batch, or add from the detected faces.

To add face pictures one by one or by batch, you need to get the pictures from the USB storage device. The picture size should be smaller than 256K with resolution between 200×200–6000×5000.

#### Adding One Face Picture

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > Al > Database > Face Database Config. The Face Database Config interface is displayed.

Step 2 Click I of the library that you want to configure.

The **Details** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-207

Details			
Name Gender /	All 👻 ID No.	Modeli All 🔻 Res	et Search
Register ID Batch re Moc	deling Delete 🗌 All		
	<< 1/ 1 >>> 1		

Step 3 Click Register ID.

The **Register ID** interface is displayed.

Register ID			
	Name		
	Gender	💿 Male	⊖ Female
	Birthday	Year Month	
	Address		
	ID Type		
	ID No.		
	Country		
		Reset	Cancel

Figure 5-208

Step 4 Click to add a face picture. The **Browse** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-209

Browse					
Device Name Total Space Free Space	sdb1(USB USB) 14.93 GB 14.92 GB	Refresh			
Address					
Name			Siz	е Туре	Delete
🗖 XVR				Folder	
				ОК	Back

<u>Step 5</u> Select a face picture and enter the registration information.

Figure	5-210
inguio	0 2 1 0

Register ID			
1207	Name	margie	
	Gender	🔿 Male 💦	💽 Female
	Birthday	1996 03	07
	Address	TTYUI	
	ID Type	Passport	
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	ID No.	11111111111111	1555555
	Country	United States	
Add	More OK	Reset	Cancel

Step 6 Click OK.

The system prompts the registration is successful.

<u>Step 7</u> On the **Details** interface, click **Search**.

The system prompts modeling is successful.

If the system prompts the message indicating modeling is in process, wait a while and then click **Search** again. If modeling is failed, the registered face picture cannot be used for face recognition.

Details

Name
Gender
All

Register ID
Batch re...

Modeling
Detete

All

Modeling Successful

Modeling Succesful

Modeling Succesful

#### **Adding Face Pictures in Batches**

<u>Step 1</u> Give a name to the face picture by referring to Table 5-56.

Naming format	Description
Name	Enter the name.
Gender	Enter 1 or 2. 1 represents male, and 2 represents female.
Birthday	Enter numbers in the format of yyyy-mm-dd.
Country	Enter the abbreviation of country. For example, CN for China.
	1 represents ID card; 2 represents passport; 3 represents military
ID Type	officer password.
ID No.	Enter the ID number.
Address	Enter the address.

Table 5-56

<u>Step 2</u> On the **Details** interface, click **Batch register**.

The Batch register interface is displayed.

Figure 5-212

Batch register			
•			
Select file, max. select 500 each		Select a folder	
The image format shall be .jpg			
Naming format:Name#SGender# AAddress.jpg(Name required, othe	ers optional)	, ,,	
e.g. Tom#S1#B19900101#NUS#T1# Gender: 1.Male 2.Female	+M123456789	#ANorth Main Street.jpg	
ID Type: 1.ID Card 2.Passport 3.Mili	tary Officer P	assport	
			Cancel

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Select file, max select 500 each time** or **Select a folder** to import face pictures. <u>Step 4</u> Click **OK** to complete batch registration.

#### Adding the Detected Faces

<u>Step 1</u> Right-click on the live view screen, and then select **Live Mode > Al Mode**. The Al Mode live view screen is displayed.

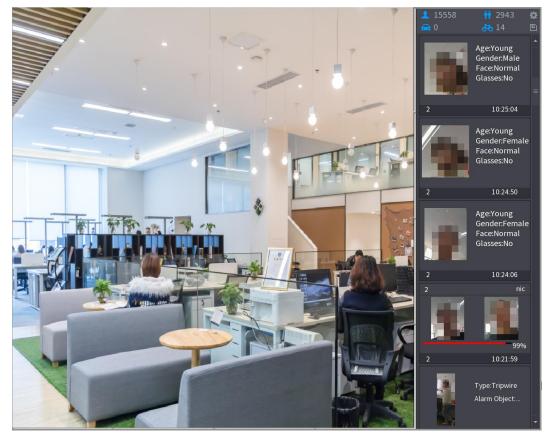


Figure 5-213

<u>Step 2</u> Double-click the detected face snapshot that you want to add. The snapshot playing back interface is displayed.

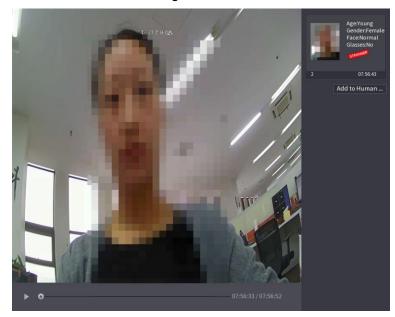


Figure 5-215

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Add to Human Face Database**. The **Register ID** interface is displayed.

	Registe	r ID _	~	1: <7°C H 04%	1				Age:Young Gender:Female Face:Normal Glasses:No STRANGER
			Name Birthday State ID Type	Year 🔹	<del>-</del> Cou	nder untry dress No.	● Male ⊂	Female	07:56:43 to Human
¥	2 1 2		Face Library N 1 2	Registered No. 5175 0	Failure peopl 4 0	Error po (			
	V					)7:56:33 / (	ОК	Cancel	

<u>Step 4</u> Select the face library and enter the ID information. <u>Step 5</u> Click **OK** to complete registration.

#### 5.11.2.4.2 Face Recognition Configuration

You can compare the detected faces with the faces in the library to judge if the detected face belongs to the library. The comparison result will be displayed on the AI mode live view screen and smart search interface, and link the alarms.

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > AI > Parameters > Face Recognition.

The Face Recognition interface is displayed.

Figure 5-216

Face	e Database				
C	0	Name	Register No.	Failed No.	Error No.
					OK Cancel

- <u>Step 2</u> In the **Channel** list, select a channel that you want to configure face recognition function, and then enable it.
- Step 3 Set the Period. For details, see "5.10.4.1 Configuring Motion Detection Settings."
- <u>Step 4</u> Set the **Target Face Database**.
  - 1) Click Setting.

The Face Library interface is displayed.



Channel Enable	1					
Schedule Target Face Data Stranger Alarm	Setting Setting					
0 Enable	Name	Similarity	Modify	Parameters	Delete	
Default					Apply	Back

- 2) Select one or multiple face libraries.
- 3) Click OK.

The selected face library is listed.

Figure 5-218

Channel Enable	1	*				
Schedule Target Face Data Stranger Alarm	Setting Setting					
0 Enable	Name	Similarity	Modify	Parameters	Delete	
		80	ľ	\$	ā	
2		80	ľ	\$	ā	
Default					Apply	Back

<u>Step 5</u> Configure the added face library.

- Click to modify the similarity. The lower the number is, the easier the alarm linkage will trigger.
- Click 
   to delete the face library.
- Click to set the alarm linkage. For details, see Table 5-46.

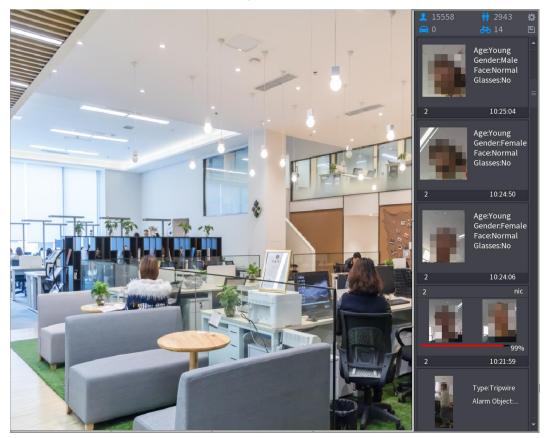
After setting is completed, click OK.

- <u>Step 6</u> (Optional) Enable the **Stranger Mode**.
  - Enable the Stranger mode (
     When the detected faces do not belong to the face library, the system remarks the face as "Stranger."
  - 2) Click **Setting** to set the alarm linkage. For details, see Table 5-46.
  - 3) After setting is completed, click **OK**.

<u>Step 7</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

After the face recognition function is enabled, right-click on the live view screen, and then select **Preview Mode > AI Mode**. The AI mode live view screen is displayed.

- If the detected face belongs to the enabled face library, the similarity result is displayed.
- If the detected face does not belong to the enabled face library, the face will be remarked as "Stranger."



#### 5.11.2.4.3 Smart Search for Face Recognition

You can compare the detected faces with the face library and play back.

- Search by attributes: Search the face library by the face attributes.
- Search by picture: Search the face library by uploading face pictures.

# Searching by Attributes

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > AI > AI Search > Face Recognition > Search by Attributes. The Search by Attributes interface is displayed.

Figure 5-220

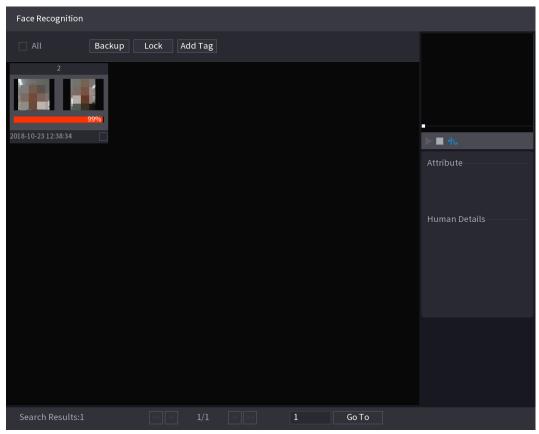
Search by Attri Search	ch by Picture	
Channel	1	
Start Time	2020 - 03 - 02	00:00:00
End Time	2020 - 03 - 03	00:00:00
Gender	All	
Age	All	
Glasses	All	
Beard	All	
Mouth Mask	All	
Expression	All	
Similarity	80	
	Smart Search	

<u>Step 2</u> Select the channel and set the parameters such as start time, end time, gender, age, glasses, beard, mask, and similarity according to your requirement.

#### Step 3 Click Smart Search.

The search result is displayed.





<u>Step 4</u> Click the picture that you want to play back. The picture with registered information is displayed. Figure 5-222

Face Recognition			
All Backup	Lock Add Tag		
			Face Properties Age:Young Gender.Fe Glasses:No Face:Confused Beard:No Mask:No Person Details Name:nic Birthday: Gender:Male ID Type: ID No: Country:
Search Results:1	≪< 1/1 >≫	1 — Со То	

Step 5 Click to play back the recorded video.

#### Double-click on the playing interface to switch between full screen playing and thumbnail playing.

You can also do the following operations to the recorded files.

- To export the database file (.csv) to the external storage device, select files, click • **Export**, and then select the save path.
- To back up the recorded files to the external storage device, select files, click • Backup, select the save path and file type, and then click Start.

File Backup						
Device Name				14.92 GB/14.93 GB(Free/Total)		otal)
Path	XVR/2018			Browse		
Video 🔽	Pictu	re		File Type	DAV	
1	. Туре	Start Time	End Tim	e	Size(KB)	
1 √2		2018-10-23 12:38:25	2018-10-	23 12:38:44	4890	
6.48 MB(Space №	leeded)					Start

- To lock the files to make it unable to be overwritten, select the files, and then click **Lock**.
- To add a mark to the file, select the files and then click Add Mark.

### Search by Picture

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > AI > AI Search > Face Recognition > Search by Picture. The Search by Picture interface is displayed.

Search by Attri Sear	rch by Picture		
Face Database	Local Upload Note: Upload	1 max 30 pictures.	Remove 0/0
•			۲
Channel	1		
Start Time	2020-03-01 00:00:00		
End Time	2020-03-02 00:00:00		
Similarity	80 Smart Search	% (50%~100%)	

Figure 5-224

<u>Step 2</u> Upload face pictures from Face Database or Local Upload.

Maximum 30 pictures can be uploaded at one time, and the system support searching 8 pictures at one time.

• Face Database

Local Configurations 225

#### 1) Click Face Database.

The Face Database interface is displayed.

Figure 5-225

Face Database			-
Face All 🔻 Name	Gender All	• Crede	Reset Search
Name:nic Gender:Male ID No.:			
	<< < 1/1	>>> 1 Goto	ОК

- 2) Set the searching parameters by selecting the face library and gender, and entering name and ID No. according to your actual requirement.
- 3) Click **Search** to display the results that satisfy the requirement.

Click Reset to clear the searching parameters.

4) Select the picture and then click Save.

The picture is displayed on the Search by Picture interface.

Figure 5-226

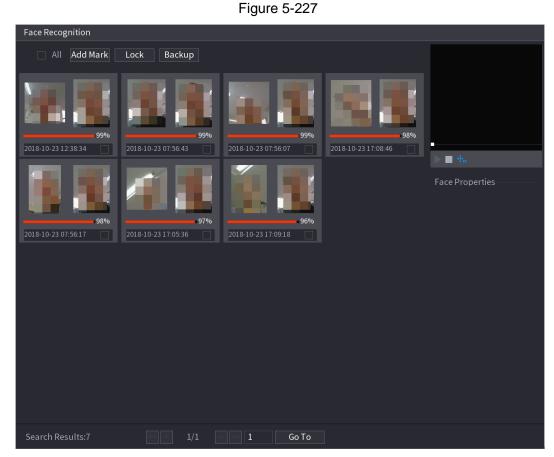
Search by Attri Sear	ch by Picture				
Face Database	Local Upload Not	te: Upload r	nax 30 pictures.	Remove 0/0	
•					Þ
Channel	1				
Start Time	2020-03-01 00:0	0:00			
End Time	2020-03-02 00:0	0:00			
Similarity	80		% (50%~100%)		
	Smart Search				

Local Upload

Plug the USB storage device (with face pictures) to the Device, and then click **Local Upload**. Then select the picture from the USB storage device, and then click **OK**. The selected face pictures are uploaded.

- <u>Step 3</u> After the face pictures are uploaded, continue to configure other parameters (channel, start time, end time, and similarity).
- Step 4 Click Smart Search.

The searching results are displayed.



<u>Step 5</u> Select the face picture that you want to play back.

Face Recognition				
All Add Mark	Lock Backup			12584
99%	99%	99%	98%	
2018-10-23 12:38:34	2018-10-23 07:56:43	2018-10-23 07:56:07	2018-10-23 17:08:46	
2018-10-23 07:56:17	97% 2018-10-23 17:05:36	96% 2018-10-23 17:09:18		Face Properties Age:Young Gender:Female Glasses:No Face:Confused Beard:No Mask:No
Search Results:7	<li>1/1 [</li>	> >> 1 Go To	]	

Step 6 Click to play back the recorded video.

### 

Double-click on the playing interface to switch between full screen playing and thumbnail playing.

You can also do the following operations to the recorded files.

- To add a mark to the file, select the files and then click Add Mark.
- To lock the files to make it unable to be overwritten, select the files, and then click Lock.
- To back up the recorded files to the external storage device, select files, click **Backup**, select the save path and file type, and then click **Start**.

Figure 5-229

File Backup					
Device Name	sdb1(US	B USB)	▼ 14.92 GB/1	L4.93 GB(Free/1	otal)
Path	XVR/2018	3-10-23/	Browse		
🔽 Video	Pictu	re	File Type	DAV	
1	. Туре	Start Time	End Time	Size(KB)	
1 √2		2018-10-23 12:38:25	2018-10-23 12:38:44	4890	
6.48 MB(Space N	leaded)				Start
0.46 мв(зрасе г	veeded)				Start

# 5.12 IoT Function

# **5.12.1 Configuring Sensor Settings**

You can connect external sensors wirelessly through the Device with USB gateway or through connecting to a camera gateway. After connection, you can activate alarm events through external sensors.

### 5.12.1.1 Connecting Sensor through Device

 $\square$ 

Only the Device with USB gateway supports this function.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > IoT > Management > Sensor Pairing. The Sensor Pairing interface is displayed.

Figure 5-230

S	ensor Pairi	ing Tem			ss Detector 🛛 🛛 W			
			All					
		Modify	Delete	Status	Access Type	Access Poin	т. Туре	
	•							Þ
								Add
								7 kuu

- <u>Step 2</u> In the Access Type list, select USB Gateway.
- Step 3 Click Add.

The **Add** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-	231
-----------	-----

Add		
Access Type	USB Gateway	
Add Mode	Pair	Pair
Access Point	USB Gateway-1	
SN		
Name		
Туре		
Category		
Status		
		Back



The Device starts pairing with the sensor.

Figure 5-232

		Add					
		Access	з Туре	USB Gate	way		
		Add W	ay	Pair		Pair	
		Access	s Point	USB Gate	eway-1		
		Serial	No.	3J01837A	AZ00008		
		Name		USB-Pani	ic Button-1		
		Туре		Panic But	tton		
		Class		Alarm In			
		Status		Connected	i		
						Back	
<u>Step 5</u>				ring interfa			
	The adde	ed senso	r inform	ation is di	splayed.		
		\$			市		
	Click 🔤	to mo	dify the	sensor na	ame; click 💻	to delete ser	nsor information.
				<b>C</b> 1	auro 5 222		
					gure 5-233		
	Sensor Pai			H Wireless	s Detector Wirele	ss Siren	
	Sensor Pai				-	ss Siren	<b>*</b>
	Access 0	Type Modify	Camera ( Delete	H Wireless Gateway Status	S Detector Wirele Channel Access Type	All Access Point	туре
	Access	Туре	Camera	H Wireless Gateway	s Detector Wirele	All	▼ Type Panic Button
	Access 0	Type Modify	Camera ( Delete	H Wireless Gateway Status	S Detector Wirele Channel Access Type	All Access Point	
	Access 0	Type Modify	Camera ( Delete	H Wireless Gateway Status	S Detector Wirele Channel Access Type	All Access Point	
	Access 0	Type Modify	Camera ( Delete	H Wireless Gateway Status	S Detector Wirele Channel Access Type	All Access Point	
	Access 0	Type Modify	Camera ( Delete	H Wireless Gateway Status	S Detector Wirele Channel Access Type	All Access Point	
	Access 0	Type Modify	Camera ( Delete	H Wireless Gateway Status	S Detector Wirele Channel Access Type	All Access Point	
	Access 0	Type Modify	Camera ( Delete	H Wireless Gateway Status	S Detector Wirele Channel Access Type	All Access Point	
	Access 0	Type Modify	Camera ( Delete	H Wireless Gateway Status	S Detector Wirele Channel Access Type	All Access Point	
	Access 0	Type Modify	Camera ( Delete	H Wireless Gateway Status	S Detector Wirele Channel Access Type	All Access Point	
	Access 0	Type Modify	Camera d	H Wireless Gateway Status	S Detector Wirele Channel Access Type	All Access Point	

## 5.12.1.2 Connecting Sensor through Camera with Gateway

Only the camera with gateway supports this function.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > IoT > Management > Sensor Pairing.

The **Sensor Pairing** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-234

 	101						
		All					
	Modify	Delete	Status	Access Ty	pe Access	Point T	ype
							•
							Add

- <u>Step 2</u> In the Access Type list, select Camera Gateway.
- <u>Step 3</u> In the **Channel** list, select the channel that is connected to the camera.
- Step 4 Click Add.

The **Add** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-235

Add		
Access Type	Camera Gateway 🔹	
Add Mode	Pair	Pair
Access Point		
SN		
Name		
Туре		
Category		
Status	Pairing failed.	
		Back

#### Step 5 Click Pair.

 $\square$ 

The Device starts pairing with the sensor. After pairing is completed, see Figure 5-236. Figure 5-236

Add		
Access Type	Camera Gateway	
Add Mode	Pair	Pair
Access Point	Chn6-Air	
SN	3J01837AAZ00008	
Name	Chn6-Panic Button-1	
Туре	Panic Button	
Category	Alarm In	
Status	Pairing failed.	
		Back

<u>Step 6</u> Click **Back** to exit the pairing interface.

The added sensor information is displayed.



Se	nsor Pai	ring Tem	iperature	/H Wireles	ss Detector Wirele	ss Siren	
	Access <sup>-</sup>	Туре	Camera	Gateway	- Channel	All	
	0	Modify	Delete	Status	Access Type	Access Point	Turne
				Status			Туре
		ľ	ā		Camera Gat	Chn2-Airfly	Panic Button
_	•						•
	Refre:	sh					Add

### 5.12.1.3 Configuring Alarm Linkage

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > IoT > Management > Wireless Detector.

The **Wireless Detector** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-238

Sensor Pairing	Temperature/Hu	Wireless Detector	Wireless Siren		
Access Type	All				
0 Enabl	e Setting Status	Access Type	Access Point	Туре	
•					Þ
Refresh					
				Apply	Back

Step 2 In the Access Type list, select USB Gateway, Camera Gateway, or All.

When **Access Type** is **Camera Gateway**, you can select **Channel** to filter the status of present wireless detector.

Step 3 Click

The **Setting** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-239

Setting				
Access Type	Camera Gateway	Access Point	Chn2-Airfly	
Туре	Panic Button	Name	Chn2-Panic Button-1	
Period	Setting	PTZ	Setting	
Alarm Out	Setting	Latch	10	Sec.
Post Record	10	Sec. Anti-Dither	5	Sec.
Record CH				
Snapshot				
Tour				
Voice Prompts	None			
More Setting	Setting			
Default			ок	Back
Deraun				Duck

<u>Step 4</u> Configure the settings for alarm linkage.

Table 5-57

Parameter	Description					
Name	Enter the customized alarm name.					
	Click Setting to display setting interface.					
Schedule	Define a period during which the motion detection is active. For details					
Schedule	see "Setting Motion Detection Period" section in "5.10.4.1 Configuring					
	Motion Detection Settings."					
	Click <b>Setting</b> to display the PTZ interface.					
PTZ Linkage	Enable PTZ linkage actions, such as selecting the preset that you want					
	to be called when an alarm event occurs.					
	Click <b>Setting</b> to display setting interface.					
	• Local Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the alarm devices					
	connected to the selected output port.					
Alarm-out Port	• Extension Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the connected					
	alarm box.					
	Wireless Siren: Enable alarm activation through devices					
	connected by USB gateway or camera gateway.					
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the					
Post-Alarm	external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 0 seconds to 300					
	seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.					
	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after					
Post Record	the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300					
	seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.					
Anti-Dither	Configure the time period from end of event detection to the stop of					
	alarm.					
	Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s)					
	starts recording after an alarm event occurs.					
Record Channel						
	The recording for alarm and auto recording must be enabled. For					
	details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule"					
	and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."					
	Select the Snapshot check box to take a snapshot of the selected					
	channel.					
Snapshot						
	To use this function, select <b>Main Menu &gt; CAMERA &gt; Encode &gt;</b>					
	Snapshot, in the Type list, select Event.					
Tour	Select the <b>Tour</b> check box to enable a tour of the selected channels.					
Alarm Tone	Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a local					
	alarm event.					

Parameter	Description
	<ul> <li>Show Message: Select the Show Message check box to enable a pop-up message in your local host PC.</li> <li>Buzzer: Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.</li> <li>Video Matrix: Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in "Main Menu &gt; DISPLAY &gt; Tour."</li> </ul>
More Setting	<ul> <li>Not all models support this function.</li> <li>Send Email: Enable the system to send an email notification when an alarm event occurs.</li> <li>To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in Main</li> </ul>
	<ul> <li>Menu &gt; NETWORK &gt; Email.</li> <li>Log: Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log.</li> <li>Extra screen: Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the extra screen outputs the settings configured in Main Menu &gt; DISPLAY &gt; Tour &gt; Sub Screen.</li> </ul>
	<ul><li>Not all models support this function.</li><li>To use this function, extra screen shall be enabled.</li></ul>

<u>Step 5</u> Click **OK** to save the settings.

<u>Step 6</u> On the **Wireless Detector** interface, click **Apply** to complete the settings.

# 5.12.2 Configuring Temperature and Humidity Camera

You can view, search and export the temperature and humidity data of camera with such sensors and configure the alarm event settings.

To use this function, please make sure there is at least one camera with temperature and humidity sensor has been connected to the Device.

# 5.12.2.1 Enabling Detecting Function

You should enable the IoT function the first time when you enter this interface.

<u>Step 1</u> On the main menu, select **IoT > Management > Temperature/Humidity**. The **Temperature/Humidity** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-240

Sensor Pairing	Tempe	rature/Hu	Wireless Detector	Wireless Siren	
	Enable	Setting	Access Point	Туре	Access Point Name
4					
		it Degree)			

<u>Step 2</u> Select the **Enable** check boxes to enable IoT function.

Figure 5-241

Sensor	Pairing	Temperatu	<mark>ıre/H</mark> Wire	less Detector	Wireless Siren		
	0 E	nable	Setting	Access Point	Туре	Access Point Nar	r
			\$	Chn 6	Temperature	Chn6-Temperature	
•						•	
	Show °F	(Fahrenheit	Degree)				

The Device starts detecting the temperature and humidity data from the camera and display on the **Realtime Display** interface.

<u>Step 3</u> (Optional) Set temperature displaying mode.

When **Show °F** (Fahrenheit Degree) is selected, the temperature will be displayed by Fahrenheit degree in **Realtime Display** tab.

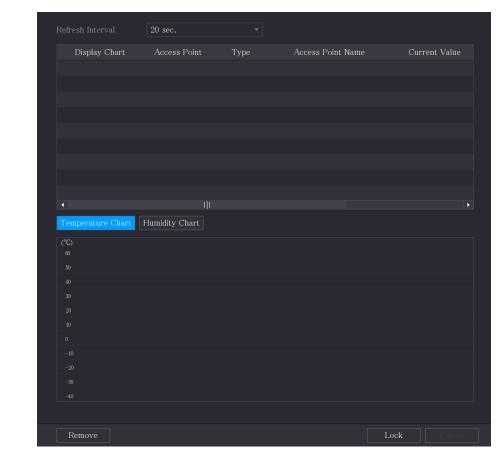
## 5.12.2.2 Viewing Temperature and Humidity Data

You can view the temperature and humidity data on the **Realtime Display** interface after the IoT function is enabled.

In the Refresh Interval box, select data refresh interval. For example, you can select 5 Sec.

You can also display the temperature and humidity data in graphical way by selecting the **Display Chart** check box to. See Figure 5-242 for humidity data in graphical way.

Figure 5-242



Click Remove to delete the data.

 $\square$ 

## 5.12.2.3 Exporting Temperature and Humidity Data

You can export the temperature and humidity data in .BMP format. Take exporting humidity data as an example.

<u>Step 1</u> Prepare a USB device and plug it into the Device.

<u>Step 2</u> On the **Realtime Display** interface, click the **Humidity** tab.

Figure 5-243

Refresh Interval	20 sec.			
Display Chart	Access Point	Туре	Access Point Name	Current Va
	Chn 6	Humidity	Chn6-Humidity-1	30%RH
4				Þ
Temperature Chart	Humidity Chart			
(%RH)			<ul> <li>Chn6-Hu</li> </ul>	midity-1
100				
90				
60				
40				
30			۲ لم	•••••
Remove			Lock	

- <u>Step 3</u> Click **Lock** to lock the data. The export button is enabled.
- <u>Step 4</u> Click **Export**. The system starts exporting the data. After exporting is finished, a **Message** dialog box is displayed.
- Step 5 Click OK.

You can find the exported data on your USB device.

## 5.12.2.4 Configuring Alarm Linkage

You can configure alarm linkage settings for temperature and humidity data.

#### 5.12.2.4.1 Configuring Alarm Linkage for Temperature Data

<u>Step 1</u> On the main interface, select **IoT > Management > Temperature/Humidity**. The **Temperature/Humidity** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-244

Sei	nsor Pairing	Temper	rature/Hu	Wireless Detector	Wireless Siren	
		Enable	Setting	Access Point	Туре	Access Point Name
	4					•
	Show °	F(Fahrenhei	t Degree)			

<u>Step 2</u> On the temperature information line, click

The **Setting** interface is displayed.

Setting					
Access Point			Туре		
Detect Position Name	Chn6-Temperature-1		Preview Channel	6	
Event Type	High -		Upper Limit	26 °C Enable	
- 1					
Period	Setting		PTZ	Setting	
Alarm Out	Setting		Latch	10	Sec.
Post Record	10	Sec.	Anti-Dither	5	Sec.
Record CH					
Snapshot					
D Tour					
Voice Prompts	None -				
More Setting	Setting				
Default				Save Ba	ack

<u>Step 3</u> Configure the settings for alarm linkage.

Figure 5-245

Table 5-58

Parameter	Description
Access Point	Indicates the channel that the camera is connected to.
Туре	Temperature by default.
Detect Position Name	Set the detect position name.
Preview Channel	Select the channel that you want to preview to help monitor the channel of access point. This channel could be the channel of access point or any other channels according to your actual situation.
Event Type	Select event type as <b>High</b> or <b>Low</b> , and set the upper and low temperature limit respectively. For example, select event type as
Upper Limit	<b>High</b> and set upper limit as <b>28</b> , the alarm occurs when the temperature reaches $28^{\circ}$ C.
Enable	Enable the alarm function.
Schedule	Define a period during which the alarm setting is active. For more information about setting the period, see "5.10.4.1 Configuring Motion Detection Settings."
Alarm-out Port	<ul> <li>Click Setting to display setting interface.</li> <li>General Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the alarm devices connected to the selected output port.</li> <li>External Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the connected alarm box.</li> <li>Wireless Siren: Enable alarm activation through devices connected by USB gateway or camera gateway.</li> </ul>
PTZ Linkage	Click <b>Setting</b> to display the PTZ interface. Enable PTZ linkage actions, such as selecting the preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs.
Post-Alarm	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 0 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds. If you enter 0, there will be no delay.
Post Record	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.
Anti-Dither	Configure the time period from end of event detection to the stop of alarm.
Snapshot	Select the check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel.

Record Channel       Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s) starts recording after an alarm occurs.         Image: The recording for IoT alarms and auto recording function must be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."         Tour       Select the check box to enable a tour of the selected channels.         Image: Tour       Select the check box to enable a tour of the selected channels.         Alarm Tone       Select to enable audio broadcast/alarm tones in response to a temperature alarm event.         Alarm Tone       Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.         •       Show Message: Select the Show Message check box to enable a pop-up message in your local host PC.         •       Buzzer: Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.         •       Video Matrix: Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in "Main Menu > DISPLAY > Tour."         More Setting       To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in Main Menu > NETWORK > Email.         •       Log: Select the check box to enable the povice to record a local alarm log.         •       Extra screen: Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the extra screen outputs the settings configured in Main Menu > DISPLAY > Tour > Sub Screen.         •       Log: Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs,	Parameter	Description			
Tour       Imain Menu > DISPLAY > Tour.         Alarm Tone       Select to enable audio broadcast/alarm tones in response to a temperature alarm event.         •       Show Message: Select the Show Message check box to enable a pop-up message in your local host PC.         •       Buzzer: Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.         •       Video Matrix: Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in "Main Menu > DISPLAY > Tour."         More Setting       Imain Menu > NETWORK > Email.         •       Log: Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs.         More Setting       Imain Menu > NETWORK > Email.         •       Log: Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs.         •       Not all models support this function is enabled in Main Menu > NETWORK > Email.         •       Log: Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the extra screen outputs the settings configured in Main Menu > DISPLAY > Tour > Sub Screen.         •       Not all models support this function.	Record Channel	channel(s) starts recording after an alarm occurs.			
Alarm Ione       temperature alarm event.         • Show Message: Select the Show Message check box to enable a pop-up message in your local host PC.         • Buzzer: Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.         • Video Matrix: Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in "Main Menu > DISPLAY > Tour."         • Not all models support this function.         • Send Email: Enable the system to send an email notification when an alarm event occurs.         • To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in Main Menu > NETWORK > Email.         • Log: Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the extra screen outputs the settings configured in Main Menu > NETWORK > Email.         • Log: Select the check box to enable the function.         • Extra screen: Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the extra screen outputs the settings configured in Main Menu > DISPLAY > Tour > Sub Screen.         • Not all models support this function.	Tour	To use this function, make sure the tour is enabled and configured			
<ul> <li>enable a pop-up message in your local host PC.</li> <li>Buzzer: Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.</li> <li>Video Matrix: Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in "Main Menu &gt; DISPLAY &gt; Tour."</li> <li>Not all models support this function.</li> <li>Send Email: Enable the system to send an email notification when an alarm event occurs.</li> <li>More Setting</li> <li>To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in Main Menu &gt; NETWORK &gt; Email.</li> <li>Log: Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the extra screen outputs the settings configured in Main Menu &gt; DISPLAY &gt; Tour &gt; Sub Screen.</li> <li>Not all models support this function.</li> </ul>	Alarm Tone	temperature alarm event.			
	More Setting	<ul> <li>enable a pop-up message in your local host PC.</li> <li>Buzzer: Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.</li> <li>Video Matrix: Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in "Main Menu &gt; DISPLAY &gt; Tour."</li> <li>Not all models support this function.</li> <li>Send Email: Enable the system to send an email notification when an alarm event occurs.</li> <li>To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in Main Menu &gt; NETWORK &gt; Email.</li> <li>Log: Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log.</li> <li>Extra screen: Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the extra screen outputs the settings configured in Main Menu &gt; DISPLAY &gt; Tour &gt; Sub Screen.</li> </ul>			

<u>Step 4</u> Click **Save** to save the settings.

#### 5.12.2.4.2 Configuring Alarm Settings for Humidity Data

You can configure the alarm event by setting the humidity data.

<u>Step 1</u> On the main interface, select **IoT > Management > Temperature/Humidity**.

The Temperature/Humidity interface is displayed.

Figure 5-246

Ser	nsor Pairing	g Temperati	ure/H Wir	eless Detector	Wireless Siren	
	0	Enable	Setting	Access Point	Туре	Access Point Nam
	•					•
		°F(Fahrenheit				

Step 2 On the humidity information line, click

The **Setting** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-247

Setting					
Access Point			Туре		
Detect Position Name	Chn6-Humidity-1		Preview Channel	6 -	
Event Type	High Humidity		Upper Limit	60 %RH Enable	
Period	Setting		РТΖ	Setting	
Alarm Out	Setting		Latch	10	Sec.
Post Record	10	Sec.	Anti-Dither	5	Sec.
Record CH					
Snapshot					
Tour					
Voice Prompts	None				
More Setting	Setting				
Default				Save Ba	ck

<u>Step 3</u> Configure the settings for the following parameters.

Table 5-59

Parameter	Description
Access Point	Indicates the channel that the camera is connected to.
Туре	Humidity by default.
Detect Position Name	Set the detect position name.
Preview Channel	Select the channel that you want to preview to help monitor the channel of access point. This channel could be the channel of access point or any other channels according to your actual situation.
Event Type	Select event type as <b>High Humidity</b> or <b>Low Humidity</b> , and set the upper and low humidity limit respectively. For example, select
Upper Limit	event type as <b>High Humidity</b> and set upper limit as <b>60</b> , the alarm occurs when the humidity reaches 60%RH.
Enable	Enable the alarm function.
Schedule	Define a period during which the alarm setting is active. For more information about setting the period, see "5.10.4.1 Configuring Motion Detection Settings."
Alarm-out Port	<ul> <li>Click Setting to display setting interface.</li> <li>General Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the alarm devices connected to the selected output port.</li> <li>External Alarm: Enable alarm activation through the connected alarm box.</li> <li>Wireless Siren: Enable alarm activation through devices connected by USB gateway or camera gateway.</li> </ul>
PTZ Linkage	Click <b>Setting</b> to display the PTZ interface. Enable PTZ linkage actions, such as selecting the preset that you want to be called when an alarm event occurs.
Post-Alarm	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off alarm after the external alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 0 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds. If you enter 0, there will be no delay.
Post Record	Set a length of time for the Device to delay turning off recording after the alarm is cancelled. The value ranges from 10 seconds to 300 seconds, and the default value is 10 seconds.
Anti-Dither	Configure the time period from end of event detection to the stop of alarm.
Snapshot	Select the check box to take a snapshot of the selected channel.

Parameter	Description				
Record Channel	Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected channel(s) starts recording after an alarm occurs.				
Tour	Select the check box to enable a tour of the selected channels.				
Alarm Tone	Select to enable audio broadcast/voice prompts in response to a temperature alarm event.				
More Setting	<ul> <li>Show Message: Select the Show Message check box to enable a pop-up message in your local host PC.</li> <li>Buzzer: Select the check box to activate a buzzer noise at the Device.</li> <li>Video Matrix: Select the check box to enable the function. When an alarm event occurs, the video output port outputs the settings configured in "Main Menu &gt; DISPLAY &gt; Tour."</li> <li>Not all models support this function.</li> <li>Send Email: Enable the system to send an email notification when an alarm event occurs.</li> <li>To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in Main Menu &gt; NETWORK &gt; Email.</li> <li>Log: Select the check box to enable the Device to record a local alarm log.</li> </ul>				

<u>Step 4</u> Click **Save** to save the settings.

# 5.12.2.5 Searching IoT Information

You can search and backup all your IoT data.

To back up the data, you should prepare a USB device and plug it into the Device. Step 1 On the main interface, select IOT > IOT Search.

#### Figure 5-248

			Display Type	List	
Туре	All			All	
Start Time	2019-12-06	00:00:00	End Time	2020 -01-05 00:0	0 : 00
					Search
	Time	Access Point	Туре	Access Point Nam	e Cur
<ul> <li>▲</li> <li>▲</li> </ul>		I			Þ
					Export

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the parameters settings.

#### Table 5-60

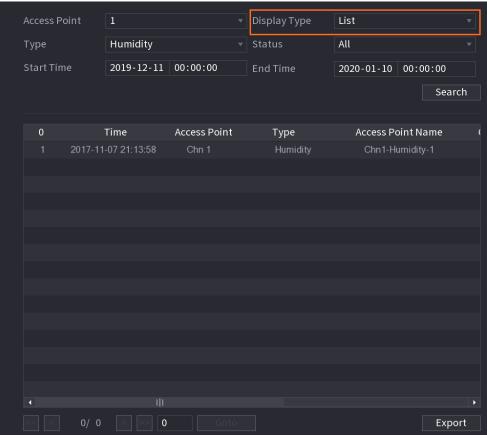
Parameter	Description		
Access Point	ndicates the channel that the camera is connected to.		
Display Type	In the <b>Display Type</b> list, select <b>List</b> or <b>Diagram</b> .		
Turno	Select the information type that you want to search. You can select		
Туре	Humidity or Temperature.		
	Select the information state that you want to search.		
Status	This option is available when you select List in the Display Type		
	list.		
Start Time	Enter the start time and end time for the information that you want		
End Time	to search.		

Step 3 Click Search.

The system starts search according to your parameters settings. After searching is finished, the result displays. For the data displayed in list, see Figure 5-249.

Click Goto to switch result pages.

#### Figure 5-249



• For the data displayed in graph, see Figure 5-250. Figure 5-250

Access Point	1		Display Type	Diagram		
Туре	Humidity					
Start Time	2019-12-11 00:00:0	00	End Time	2020-01-10	00:00:00	
					Searc	ch
(%RH) 100				● Chn1-	Humidity-1	
90 80						
60 50	•••••••••••••••••	*****	******	••••••	*******	
40 30					The second s	
20						
					Ехро	rt

<u>Step 4</u> Click **Export.** The system starts exporting the data.

After exporting is finished, a **Message** dialog box is displayed.

#### Step 5 Click OK.

You can find the exported data on your USB device.

# 5.12.3 Configuring Wireless Siren

You can connect the wireless siren to the Device, when there is an alarm event activated on the Device, the wireless siren generate alarms.

- <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > IoT > Management > Wireless Siren.
  - The Wireless Siren interface is displayed.

Sensor Pairing	Temperature/Hu	Wireless Detector	Wireless Siren		
USB Gateway Mode					
Auto					
Manual					
Off					
Camera Gatewa					
Mode					
Auto					
Manual					
Off					
Alarm Reset	ОК				
				Apply	Back

Figure 5-251

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the wireless alarm output.

Table	5-61
-------	------

Parameter	Description			
	Auto: Automatically activate alarm if the alarm output function			
	for wireless siren is enabled for specific events. For example, if			
USB Gateway,	you want to enable the alarm output through wireless siren for			
Camera Gateway	motion detection, see "Alarm Output" parameter in Table 5-41.			
	Manual: Activate alarm immediately.			
	Off: Do not activate alarm.			
Alarm Release	Click <b>OK</b> to clear all alarm output status of wireless siren.			

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to save the settings.

# **5.13 Configuring POS Settings**

You can connect the Device to the POS (Point of Sale) machine and receive the information from it. This function applies to the scenarios such as supermarket POS machine. After connection is established, the Device can access the POS information and display the overlaid text in the channel window.

 $\square$ 

Playing POS information in the local playback and viewing the POS information in the live view screen only support single-channel mode and four-channel mode. Displaying monitoring screen and playing back in the web support multi-channel mode.

# **5.13.1 Searching the Transaction Records**

 $\square$ 

The system supports fuzzy search.

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > POS > POS Search.

The **POS Search** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-252

POS Info		Search	
Channel	All		
Start Time	2020-01-04 00:00:00		
End Time	2020-01-05 00:00:00		
0 Trans	action Time	Channel	Play

- <u>Step 2</u> In the **POS Search** box, enter the information such as transaction number on your receipt, amount, or product name.
- <u>Step 3</u> In the **Start Time** box and **End Time** box, enter the time period that you want to search the POS transaction information.
- <u>Step 4</u> Click **Search**. The searched transaction results display in the table.

# 5.13.2 Configuring POS Settings

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > POS > POS Setting. The POS Setting interface is displayed.

Figure 5-253

POS Name	POS1	•			
			Record Channel	\$	
				\$	
				General	
			Connection Mode	TCP -	*
			Character Encode	Unicode(UTF-8	
			Overlay Mode	Page	
			Network Timeout	100	
			Overlay Time	120	
				Medium	
			POS Info		
			Line Break		

 $\underline{Step \ 2}$  Configure the settings for the POS parameters.

#### Table 5-62

Parameter	Description
	In the <b>POS Name</b> list, select the POS machine that you want to
DOC Name	configures settings for. Click to modify the POS name.
POS Name	
	The POS name supports 21 Chinese characters or 63 English
	characters.
Enable	Enable the POS function.
	Select the channel(s) that you want to record. The selected
Record Channel	channel(s) starts recording after an alarm occurs.
	The recording for POS alarms and auto recording function must
	be enabled. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video
	Storage Schedule" and "5.9.1 Enabling Record Control."
Privacy	Enter the privacy content.
Protocol	Select <b>POS</b> by default. Different machine corresponds to different
	protocol.
	In the <b>Connect Type</b> list, select the connection protocol type.
Connection Mode	Click E, the IP Address interface is displayed.
	In the Source IP box, enter the IP address (the machine that is
	connected to the Device) that sends messages.
Character Encode	Select a character encoding mode.

Parameter	Description	
Overlay Mode	<ul> <li>In the Overlay Mode list, Select Page or ROLL.</li> <li>Page means to turn a page when there are 16 lines of overlay information.</li> <li>ROLL means to roll up the interface when there are 16 lines of overlay information. The first line disappears each time.</li> <li>When local preview mode is 4-split, overlay information is substituted when there are 8 lines.</li> </ul>	
Network Timeout	When the network is not working correctly and cannot be recovered after the entered timeout limit, the POS information will not display normally. After the network is recovered, the latest POS information will be displayed.	
Overlay Time	Enter the time that how long you want to keep the POS information displaying. For example, enter 5, the POS information disappear from the screen after 5 seconds.	
Font Size In the Font Size list, select <b>Small</b> , <b>Medium</b> , or <b>Large</b> as the size of POS information		
Font Color In the color bar, click to select the color for the text size information.		
POS Info	Enable the POS Info function, the POS information displays in the live view screen.	
Line Break	It does not need to configure. The system goes to a new line 1s after no data is received. If you enter a line delimiter, the system goes to a new line when overlay information identifies the line delimiter (hexadecimal). For example, if line delimiter is F and overlay information is 123156789, the local preview and web overlay information is displayed as: 123 6789	

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

# 5.14 Configuring Backup Settings

# 5.14.1 Finding USB Device

When you inset a USB storage device into the USB port of the Device, the Device detects the USB storage device and pops up **Find USB device** interface, which provides you a shortcut to perform backup and upgrading operations. See Figure 5-254.

For details, see "5.14.2 Backing up Files", "5.21.2 Viewing Log Information", "5.20.4 Exporting and Importing System Settings", and "5.20.6 Updating the Device."

Figure 5-254

Bac	Backup Device Found				
	Name: sdb1(USB USB) Total Space: 0.00 KB/7.51 GB(Free/Total)				
_	File Backup	Log Backup			
	Config Backup	p Update			

# 5.14.2 Backing up Files

You can back up the recorded videos and snapshots.

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > Backup.

The **Backup** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-255

Device Name	sdb1(USB USB)	•	Format	0.00 KB/7	.51 GB(	Free/To	tal)
Storage Path			Browse				
Record Ch	A1						
Туре	All		Main Stream				
Start Time	2020 -01 -04 00 :00 :00		End Time	2020 -0	1 -04	15 :50	):14
File Format	DAV				Sear	ch	Remove
0 Ch	annel Type Start Time		End Time		Size(ł	KB)	Play
0.00 KB(Neede	d Space)						Backup

Step 2 Configure the settings for the backup parameters.

Table 5-63

Parameter	Description			
Device Name	In the Device Name list, select the device that you want to back up			
Device Mame	the files to.			
	Click Format, the Format interface is displayed.			
	• If the capacity of external storage device is less than 2TB, you			
Format	can select FAT32 or NTFS to format it.			
	• If the capacity of external storage device is equal to or more			
	than 2TB, you can only select NTFS to format it.			

Parameter	Description				
Path	Click Browse, the Browse interface is displayed. Select the route				
Falli	where you want to search for the files.				
Record Channel	In the Record Channel list, select the channel where you want to				
Record Channel	search for the files.				
Туре	In the <b>Type</b> list, select the file type that you want to search.				
Start Time	Enter the start time and end time for the files that you want to				
End Time	search.				
File Format	In the File Format list, select the file format as DAV or MP4 that				
rile roimat	you want to search.				

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Search** to search the files that meet the configured settings. The searched results will display in the table.

<u>Step 4</u> Select the files that you want to back up.

<u>Step 5</u> Click **Backup** to back up the selected files to the configured path.

Ш

Click **Remove** to remove all the searched results.

The system will display a backup progress bar. A dialog box will be prompted When backup is completed.

Browse						
Device Name	sdb1(USB USB)	▼ Ref	resh For	mat		
Total Space	28.91 GB					
Free Space	27.70 GB					
Address						
Name		Size	Туре	Delete	Play	
📄 camera1_20191210	123549_2019121	764.61 MB	File	ā		
🗎 upgrade_info_7db	780a713a4.txt	73 B	File	ā		
upgrade_device_1		0 B	File	ā		
SmartPlayer.exe		3.66 MB	File	ā		
🖹 SmartPlayer(1).exe		2.20 MB	File	ā		
HCVR_ch1_main_2	20191225121429	9.0 KB	File	ā	$\odot$	
■ 1.txt		716 B	File	ā		
SmartPlayer(2).exe	SmartPlayer(2).exe		File	ā		
HCVR_ch1_main_2	20191225121429	9.0 KB	File	<b>i</b>		
New Folder				OK	Back	

Figure 5-256

Step 6 Click OK.

# 5.15 Network Management

# 5.15.1 Configuring Network Settings

You can ensure the network interworking between the Device and other devices through configuring the network settings.

## 5.15.1.1 Configuring TCP/IP Settings

You can configure the settings for the Device such as IP address, DNS according to the networking plan.

Select Main Menu > NETWORK > TCP/IP, the TCP/IP interface is displayed.

For details about parameter settings, see "5.1.4.4 Configuring Network Settings."

Figure 5-257

NIC Name	IP Address	Network Mode	NIC Member	Modify	Unbind	
NIC1		Single NIC	1	ľ		
IP Address:		Default Gat		MTU	:1500	
MAC Address:		Subnet Mas		Mode		
	IPv4					
Preferred DNS						
Alternate DNS						
Default Card	NIC1					
						Apply

## 5.15.1.2 Configuring Port Settings

You can configure the maximum connection accessing the Device from Client such as WEB, Platform, and Mobile Phone and configure each port settings.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > NETWORK > Port.

The **Port** interface is displayed.

🚱 NETWORK		🍪 🚔 🖏 🛡	<b>L</b> _*	LIVE	
TCP/IP		128			
> Port		37777			
Wi-Fi	UDP Port	37778			
3G/4G		80			
PPPoE		443			
DDNS		554			
UPnP	NTP Server Port	123			
Email		38800			
SNMP					
Multicast					
Alarm Center					
Register					
P2P					
				Apply	Back

Figure 5-258

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the connection parameters.

The parameter setting can take effect without need to reboot the device.

Tabl	o 5.	-64
Iabi	e 0	-04

Parameter	Description					
	The allowable maximum clients accessing the Device at the same					
Max Connection	time, such as WEB, Platform, and Mobile Phone.					
	Select a value between 1 and 128. The default value setting is 128.					
	The default value setting is 37777. You can enter the value					
TCP Port	according to your actual situation.					
	The default value setting is 37778. You can enter the value					
UDP Port	according to your actual situation.					
	The default value setting is 80. You can enter the value according					
HTTP Port	to your actual situation.					
	If you enter other value, for example, 70, and then you should enter					
	70 after the IP address when logging in the Device by browser.					
RTSP Port	The default value setting is 554. You can enter the value according					
RISP PUIL	to your actual situation.					
	Data transmission. The value range is from 1 through 65535. The					
POS Port	default value is 38800.					
NTD Son or Dort	The default value setting is 123. You can enter the value according					
NTP Server Port	to your actual situation.					

HTTPS communication port. The default value setting is 443. You can enter the value according to your actual situation.

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

## 5.15.1.3 Configuring Wi-Fi Connection Settings

You can make wireless connection between the Device and the other devices in the same network through Wi-Fi settings, facilitating the devices connection and mobility.

Only the Device with Wi-Fi module supports this function.

#### Step 1 Select Main Menu > NETWORK > Wi-Fi.

The Wi-Fi interface is displayed.

🚱 NETWORK	<b>E</b> 🚯 💻	🌣 🛡 🚣	LIVE <b>L</b> IVE
TCP/IP	Connect Automatically		
Port			
> Wi-Fi	0 SSID Signal	Intensity Wi-Fi Info	
3G/4G			Disconnected
PPPoE			
DDNS			
UPnP			
Email			
SNMP			
Multicast			
Alarm Center			
Register			
P2P			
	Refresh Connect Discom		Apply Back

Figure 5-259

Step 2 Configure the settings for the Wi-Fi connection parameters.

Table 5-65

Parameter	Description			
Connect	Enable Connect Automatically.			
Connect Automatically	After the Device is restarted, it will automatically connect to the			
	nearest hotspot that had been connected successfully.			
Defreeh	Refresh the hotspot list. The self-adaption function such as adding			
Refresh	password is supported if such setting was once configured.			

Connect	<ul> <li>In the hotpots list, select a hotspot, and then click Connect.</li> <li>To reconnect the same hotspot, disconnect first and then reconnect.</li> <li>To connect to other hotspot, disconnect from the current connected hotspot first, and then connect to the other hotspot.</li> </ul>				
Disconnect	To disconnect from a hotspot, click <b>Disconnect</b> .				

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

After the Device is connected to a Wi-Fi hotspot, in the **Wi-Fi Info** area, the current hotspot, IP address, subnet mask, and default gateway are displayed.

## 5.15.1.4 Configuring 3G/4G Settings

You can connect a wireless 3G/4G module to the USB port of the Device and then access the Device with the IP address provided by the module.

 $\square$ 

Not all models support this function.

<u>Step 1</u> Connect the wireless 3G/4G module to the USB port of the Device.

#### Step 2 Select Main Menu > NETWORK > 3G/4G.

The **3G/4G** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-260

🍪 NETWORK		🍪 🚔 🌣	. ⊉چ		LN	/E 💄 🗗 🗸 🔡
TCP/IP	No Signal					Area 1
Port						
Wi-Fi						
→ 3G/4G						
PPPoE						Area 2
DDNS						
UPnP						
Email						
SNMP	Password			Dial		
Multicast	Network Status					
						Area 3
Alarm Center						
Register	PPP Status					
P2P						
					Apply	Back

The 3G/4G interface is consisted of three areas:

- Area 1: Displays the signal strength.
- Area 2: Displays the module configurations.
- Area 3: Displays the connection state.

 $\square$ 

The information of Area 2 will display after the 3G/4G module is connected; while the information of Area 1 and Area 3 will display only after the 3G/4G function is enabled.

<u>Step 3</u> The Device starts identifying the wireless module and displays the recognized information for the parameters in Area 2.

Parameter	Description			
NIC Name	Displays the name of Ethernet card.			
Network Type	Displays the network type. Different type represents different supplier.			
APN	Displays the default APN number.			
Dial-up No.	Displays the default dial No.			
Authentication	Authoritization mode. You can aclest <b>BAD, CHAD</b> , or <b>NO, AUTH</b>			
Туре	Authentication mode. You can select <b>PAP</b> , <b>CHAP</b> , or <b>NO_AUTH</b> .			
Username,	Enter the upproame and password for authentication			
Password	Enter the username and password for authentication.			

Table 5-66

<u>Step 4</u> Select the **Enable** check box.

<u>Step 5</u> Click **Dial** to start connecting.

After the connection is established, the result is displayed in the **Wireless Network** area.

#### Figure 5-261

🚯 NETWORK		🍪 🖲	ت، 🛡	<b>L</b>	LIVE	
TCP/IP	No Signal					
Port						
Wi-Fi	NIC Name			Enable		
> 3G/4G	Network Type					
PPPoE	APN					
DDNS	Authentication Type					
UPnP	Dial-up No.					
Email	Username					
SNMP	Password					
	Network Status					
Multicast	Module Status :			IP Address		
Alarm Center	SIM Status -			Subnet Mask		
Register	PPP Status -			Default Gateway		
P2P						
					Apply	Back

<u>Step 6</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

#### Supported 3G/4G Modules by the Device

- China Mobile 3G/4G: ZTE MF832S
- China Mobile 4G: ZTE MF832S

- China Unicom 3G: ZTE MF667S, HUAWEI E353U-1
- China Telecom 4G: HUAWEI EC122, ZTE AC2736

 $\square$ 

- If the Device is connected to China Telecom 3G/4G network, you can login the Device with the public IP address through the PC of public internet (The HTTP port is not configured as 80). If the Device is connected to China Unicom or China Mobile 3G network, which are defined as private network, therefore you cannot login the Device through PC that is connected to public internet.
- The Ethernet card names that are displayed on the 3G/4G interface are not constant, and they could be ppp5, ppp6, ppp7 or ppp8 and are different depending on the USB2.0 port on the Device that is connected to the 3G module.
- If you dial to connect to 3G/4G network, you have to keep trying till succeeded. The default gateway could be switched depending on the priority of Ethernet cards.
- The China Unicom and China Mobile 3G/4G modules in USB flash disk style do not support EDGE mode for the moment.

## 5.15.1.5 Configuring PPPoE Settings

PPPoE is another way for the Device to access the network. You can establish network connection by configuring PPPoE settings to give the Device a dynamic IP address in the WAN. To use this function, firstly you need to obtain the user name and password from the Internet Service Provider.

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > NETWORK > PPPoE.

The **PPPoE** interface is displayed.

🚱 NETWORK		چ	🌣 🛡	<b>L</b> .	
	Password				
DDNS					
					Apply Back

Figure 5-262

- <u>Step 2</u> Enable the PPPoE function.
- <u>Step 3</u> In the **Username** box and **Password** box, enter the user name and password accordingly provided by the Internet Service Provider.
- Step 4 Click Apply to complete the settings.

The system pops up a message to indicate the successfully saved. The IP address appears on the PPPoE interface. You can use this IP address to access the Device.

When the PPPoE function is enabled, the IP address on the **TCP/IP** interface cannot be modified.

## 5.15.1.6 Configuring DDNS Settings

When the IP address of the Device changes frequently, the DDNS function can dynamically refresh the correspondence between the domain on DNS and the IP address, ensuring you access the Device by using the domain.

#### Preparing for Configuration

Confirm if the Device supports the DDNS Type and log in the website provided by the DDNS service provider to register the information such as domain from PC located in the WAN.

After you have registered and logged in the DDNS website successfully, you can view the information of all the connected devices under this user name.

#### **Configuring Steps**

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > NETWORK > DDNS.

The **DDNS** interface is displayed.

Figure	5-263
--------	-------

	🚱 NETWORK	🍪 📥 🍫 🛡	┚ ≗⇔		
		After enabling DDNS function		lect your device info.	
		Dyndns DDNS members.dyndns.org			
>	DDNS				
				Apply Back	

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the DDNS parameters.

67

Parameter	Description
	Enable the DDNS function.
Enable	
	After enabling DDNS function, the third-party might collect your
	Device information.
Туре	Type and address of DDNS service provider.
	Type: Dyndns DDNS; address: members.dyndns.org
Server Address	<ul> <li>Type: NO-IP DDNS; address: dynupdate.no-ip.com</li> </ul>
	Type: CN99 DDNS; address: members.3322.org
Domain Name	The domain name for registering on the website of DDNS service
Domain Name	provider.
User Name	Enter the user name and password obtained from DDNS service
Deenword	provider. You need to register (including user name and password)
Password	on the website of DDNS service provider.
Interval	Enter the amount of time that you want to update the DDNS.

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

Enter the domain name in the browser on your PC, and then press **Enter**. If the web interface of the Device is displayed, the configuration is successful. If not, the configuration is failed.

## 5.15.1.7 Configuring EMAIL Settings

You can configure the email settings to enable the system to send the email as a notification when there is an alarm event occurs.

```
<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > NETWORK > Email.
```

The **Email** interface is displayed.

	🍪 NETWORK		🍪 🚔 🌤 🛡	<b>L</b> ₀	
		SMTP Server	MailServer		
			25		
;			Receiver1		
	SNMP		none		
			XVR ALERT		
			TLS		
			120		
			60		
					Apply Back

Figure 5-264

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the email parameters.

Table 5-68

Parameter	Description		
Enable	Enable the email function.		
LINDIE	There might be risk of sending data to specified email address after		
	it is enabled.		
SMTP Server	Enter the address of SMTP server of sender's email account.		
Port	Enter the port value of SMTP server. The default value setting is		
Poll	25. You can enter the value according to your actual situation.		
Username	Enter the user name and password of sender's email account.		
Password			
Anonymous	If enable the anonymity function, you can login as anonymity.		
	In the Receiver list, select the number of receiver that you want to		
Receiver	receive the notification. The Device supports up to three mail		
	receivers.		
Email Address	Enter the email address of mail receiver(s).		

Parameter	Description			
Sender	Enter the sender's email address. It supports maximum three			
Sender	senders separated by comma.			
	Enter the email subject.			
Subject	Supports Chinese, English and Arabic numerals. It supports			
	maximum 64 characters.			
Attachment	Enable the attachment function. When there is an alarm event, the			
Allachimeni	system can attach snapshots as an attachment to the email.			
	Select the encryption type: NONE, SSL, or TLS.			
Encryption Type				
	For SMTP server, the default encryption type is <b>TLS</b> .			
	This is the interval that the system sends an email for the same			
	type of alarm event, which means, the system does not send an			
Sending Interval	email upon any alarm event.			
(sec.)	This setting helps to avoid the large amount of emails caused by			
	frequent alarm events.			
	The value ranges from 0 to 3600. 0 means that there is no interval.			
Health Mail	Enable the health test function. The system can send a test email			
	to check the connection.			
Sending Interval	This is the interval that the system sends a health test email.			
(Min.)	The value ranges from 30 to 1440. 0 means that there is no			
(10111.)	interval.			
	Click Test to test the email sending function. If the configuration is			
Toot	correct, the receiver's email account will receive the email.			
Test				
	Before testing, click <b>Apply</b> to save the settings.			

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

## 5.15.1.8 Configuring UPnP Settings

You can map the relationship between the LAN and the WAN to access the Device on the LAN through the IP address on the WAN.

## Preparation for Configuration

- Login the router to set the WAN port to enable the IP address to connect into the WAN.
- Enable the UPnP function at the router.
- Connect the Device with the LAN port on the router to connect into the LAN.
- Select Main Menu > NETWORK > TCP/IP, configure the IP address into the router IP address range, or enable the DHCP function to obtain an IP address automatically.

## **Configuration Steps**

## <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > NETWORK > UPnP.

The  $\ensuremath{\textbf{UPnP}}$  interface is displayed.

¢	🚱 NETWORK			٤	<b>. \$</b> _		<b>‡</b>		LIVE	<b>.</b> (	
		LAN IP									
		WAN IP									
			Service Name		Protocol	Internal Port	External	Modify			
	Email							ľ			
			RTSP					ľ			
			SNMP					ľ			
								A	oply	Ba	ıck

Figure 5-265

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the UPnP parameters.

Parameter	Description
	Enable the UPnP function.
Port Mapping	
1 ort mapping	After it is enabled, the intranet services and ports shall be mapped
	to extranet, proceed with caution.
	Indicates the status of UPnP function.
Status	Offline: Failed.
	Online: Succeeded.
	Enter IP address of router on the LAN.
LAN IP	
	After mapping succeeded, the system obtains IP address
	automatically without performing any configurations.
	Enter IP address of router on the WAN.
WAN IP	
	After mapping succeeded, the system obtains IP address
	automatically without performing any configurations.

Parameter	Description
Port Mapping List	<ul> <li>The settings in PAT table correspond to the UPnP PAT table on the router.</li> <li>Service Name: Name of network server.</li> <li>Protocol: Type of protocol.</li> <li>Int. Port: Internal port that is mapped on the Device.</li> <li>Ext. Port: External port that is mapped on the router.</li> <li>Image: To avoid the conflict, when setting the external port, try to use the ports from 1024 through 5000 and avoid popular ports from 1 through 255 and system ports from 256 through 1023.</li> <li>When there are several devices in the LAN, reasonably arrange the ports mapping to avoid mapping to the same external port.</li> <li>When establishing a mapping relationship, ensure the mapping ports are not occupied or limited.</li> <li>The internal and external ports of TCP and UDP must be the same and cannot be modified.</li> <li>Click is to modify the external port.</li> </ul>

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

In the browser, enter http://WAN IP: External IP port. You can visit the LAN Device.

## 5.15.1.9 Configuring SNMP Settings

 $\square$ 

Not all models support this function.

You can connect the Device with some software such as MIB Builder and MG-SOFT MIB Browser to manage and control the Device from the software.

## Preparation for Configuration

- Install the software that can manage and control the SNMP, such as MIB Builder and MG-SOFT MIB Browser
- Obtain the MIB files that correspond to the current version from the technical support.

## **Configuration Steps**

#### Step 1 Select Main Menu > NETWORK > SNMP.

The  $\ensuremath{\mathsf{SNMP}}$  interface is displayed.

	NETWORK		🍪 🔔	<b>\$</b> . 🛡	<b>_</b> ≎	LIVE	1 - UR
					🔽 V3 (Recommended)		
		SNMP Port	161				
			162				
			Public			Private	
>	SNMP		MD5			MD5	
	Alarm Center		CBC-DES			CBC-DES	
						Apply	Back

Figure 5-266

 $\underline{Step \ 2} \quad Configure \ the \ settings \ for \ the \ SNMP \ parameters.$ 

Table 5-70

Parameter	Description
Enable	Enable the SNMP function.
Version	Select the check box of SNMP version(s) that you are using.
	The default version is V3. There is a risk of select V1 or V2.
SNMP Port	Indicates the monitoring port on the agent program.
Read Community	Indicates the read/write strings supported by the agent program
Write Community	Indicates the read/write strings supported by the agent program.
Trap Address	Indicates the destination address for the agent program to send the
Trap Address	Trap information.
Trap Port	Indicates the destination port for the agent program to send the
	Trap information.
Read-Only	Enter the user name that is allowed to access the Device and has
Username	the "Read Only" permission.
Read/Write	Enter the user name that is allowed to access the Device and has
Username	the "Read and Write" permission.
Authentication Type	Includes MD5 and SHA. The system recognizes automatically.
Authentication	Enter the password for authentication type and encryption type.
Password	The password should be no less than eight characters.

Parameter	Description
Encryption	
Password	
Encryption Type	In the <b>Encryption Type</b> list, select an encryption type. The default setting is CBC-DES.

<u>Step 3</u> Compile the two MIB files by MIB Builder.

Step 4 Run MG-SOFT MIB Browser to load in the module from compilation.

- <u>Step 5</u> On the MG-SOFT MIB Browser, enter the Device IP that you want to manage, and then select the version number to query.
- <u>Step 6</u> On the MG-SOFT MIB Browser, unfold the tree-structured directory to obtain the configurations of the Device, such as the channels quantity and software version.

## 5.15.1.10 Configuring Multicast Settings

When you access the Device from the network to view the video, if the access is exceeded, the video will not display. You can use the multicast function to group the IP to solve the problem.

#### Step 1 Select Main Menu > NETWORK > Multicast.

The **Multicast** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-267

Step 2 Configure the settings for the multicast parameters.

Table 5-71

Parameter	Description
Enable	Enable the multicast function.

IP Address	Enter the IP address that you want to use as the multicast IP. The IP address ranges from 224.0.0.0 through 239.255.255.255.
Port	Enter the port for the multicast. The port ranges from 1025 through 65000.

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

You can use the multicast IP address to login the web.

On the web login dialog box, in the **Type** list, select **MULTICAST**. The web will automatically obtain the multicast IP address and join. Then you can view the video through multicast function.



<b>alhua</b> TECHNOLOGY	Web Login
٤.	
â	
ТСР	
	Forgot Password
Login	

# 5.15.1.11 Configuring Register Settings

You can register the Device into the specified proxy server which acts as the transit to make it easier for the client software to access the Device.

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > NETWORK > Register.

The **Register** interface is displayed.

	🍪 NETWORK	چ ک	$\mathbf{a}_{o}$	◙	<b>L</b> .	LIVE	L 🖌 🛛	🖻 🗸 🛄
		1						
		0.0.0.0						
		8000						
	Alarm Center							
						Apply	Ba	ack

Figure 5-269

Step 2 Configure the settings for the register parameters.

Table 5	5-72
---------	------

Parameter	Description
Enable	Enable the register function.
No.	The default value is 1.
Server IP Address	Enter the server IP address or the server domain that you want to
	register to.
Port	Enter the port of the server.
Sub Service ID	This ID is allocated by the server and used for the Device.

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

## 5.15.1.12 Configuring Alarm Center Settings

You can configure the alarm center server to receive the uploaded alarm information. To use this function, the **Report Alarm** check box must be selected. For details about alarm event settings, see "5.10 Alarm Events Settings."

#### Step 1 Select Main Menu > NETWORK > Alarm Center.

The Alarm Center interface is displayed.

# CP/IP Pot Pot WHR 3G/4G Protocol Type Aarn Center Server Address Port DDNS UPnP Email SNMP Multicast P2P Multicast P2P Multicast

Figure 5-270

Step 2 Configure the settings for the alarm center parameters.

Table \$	5-73
----------	------

Parameter	Description
Enable	Enable the alarm center function.
Protocol Type	In the Protocol Type list, select protocol type. The default is
т тогосог туре	ALARM CENTER.
Server Address	The IP address and communication port of the PC installed with
Port	alarm client.
Auto Doport Diop	In the Auto Report Plan list, select time cycle and specific time for
Auto Report Plan	uploading alarm.

Step 3 Click Apply to complete the settings.

## 5.15.1.13 Configuring P2P Settings

You can manage the devices by using P2P technology to download the application and register the devices. For details, see "5.1.4.5 Configuring P2P Settings."

# 5.15.2 Configuring Network Testing Settings

## 5.15.2.1 Testing the Network

You can test the network connection status between the Device and other devices.

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > MAINTAIN > Network > Test.

The **Network Test** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-271

		Test			
Network Test_					
Destination IP					
Device Name	sdb1(USB USF	3)			Refresh
Address					Browse
		ID F			
Name		IP F	acket Sniffer Size	Packet Sniffe	er Backup
Name LAN1		IP F	acket Sniffer Size OKB	Packet Sniffe	

- <u>Step 2</u> In the **Destination IP** box, enter the IP address.
- Step 3 Click Test.

After testing is completed, the test result is displayed. You can check the evaluation for average delay, packet loss, and network status.

Figure 5-272

Online User	Network Load	Test			
Online Oser	Network Load	Test			
Network Test					
Destination IP	10.00 mm				
Test Result	Average Delay:1.0ms Packet Loss Rate:0%				
	Network Status:Ol				
	ckup				
Device Name	sdb1(USB USB)			Refresh	
Address					Browse
Name	IP		Packet Sniffer Size	Packet Sniffe	r Backup
LAN1	79 19 7		0KB	$\odot$	

## 5.15.2.2 Capturing Packet and Backing up

Packet capture means the operations such as capturing, resending, and editing data that are sent and received during network transmission. When there is network abnormality, you can perform packet capturing and back up into the USB storage device. This date can be provided to the technical support for analyzing the network condition.

```
<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > MAINTAIN > Network > Test.
```

The **Test** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-273

Online User Ne	etwork Load Test		
Network Test			
Destination IP			
Test Result			
Device Name	sdb1(USB USB)		▼ Refresh
Address			Browse
Name	IP	Packet Sniffer Size	Packet Sniffer Backup
LAN1		0KB	$\odot$

- <u>Step 2</u> Connect a USB storage device to the Device.
- Step 3 Click Refresh.

The Device starts detecting the USB storage device and displays its name in the **Device Name** box.

- <u>Step 4</u> Select the route of the data that you want to capture and back up.
  - 1) In the **Packet Sniffer Backup** area, click **Browse**.

The **Browse** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-274

owse					
Device Name	sdb1(USB USB)		Refresh For	rmat	
	7.51 GB				
	0.00 KB				
Address					
Name		Size	Туре	Delete	
🗅 cx				ā	
FOUND.000				亩	
🕒 Shahar Shiana da				<b> </b>	
📄 snapPic				亩	
<ul> <li>••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••</li></ul>					
<ul> <li>• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •</li></ul>				亩	
cx6				ā	

- 2) Select the route.
  - If there are several USB storage devices are connected to the Device, you can select from the **Device Name** list.
  - Click Refresh to total space, free space and the file list in the selected USB storage device.
  - In the case of insufficient capacity, click to delete the needless files.
  - Click **New Folder** to create a new folder in the USB storage device.
- 3) Click **OK** to save the route selection settings.

The Test interface is displayed again.

Step 5 Click Constant packet capturing and backing up.

 $\square$ 

- Only the data packet of one LAN can be captured at one time.
- After capturing starts, you can exit the **Test** interface to perform other operations such as web login and monitoring.

Step 6 Click to stop capturing.

The backup data is saved in the selected route under the naming style "LAN name-time.pcap." You can open it by using Wireshark software.

Figure 5-275

owse					
Device Name	sda5(USB DISK)	Refres	sh		
Total Space	15.60 GB				
Free Space	15.60 GB				
Address					
		0:		Delete	Disc
Name		Size	Type Folder	Delete	Play
	_20171103141044.csv	464 B	File	ā	
printf_2017110	5172349.txt	451.3 KB	File		
kmsg_printf_20	)171105172349.txt	14.9 KB	File	亩	
LAN1-2017110	7135215.pcap	1.18 MB	File	ā	
New Folder				ОК	Back

# **5.16 Configuring Account Settings**

You can add, modify and delete user accounts, groups, and ONVIF users, and set security questions for admin account.

 The user name supports 31 characters and group name supports 15 characters. The user name can be consisted of letter, number, "\_", "@", ".".

- You can set maximum 64 users and 20 groups. The group name by "User" and "Admin" cannot be deleted. You can set other groups and define the relevant permissions. However, the admin account cannot be set randomly.
- You can manage the account by user and group and the name cannot be repeated. Every user must belong to a group, and one user only belongs to one group.

## 5.16.1 Configuring User Account

## 5.16.1.1 Adding a User Account

The **User** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-276

点 ACCOUNT			🛋 🌣 🛡	<b>2</b>	
> User					
Group	1 Use	rname Group Na	me Modify Delete	e Status MAC Ad	dress Remar
ONVIF User	1 ac	lmin admin		Local L	admin 's a
Password Reset					
	Add				
	Add				



The Add interface is displayed.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > ACCOUNT > User.

Figure 5-277

Username Confirm Password Confirm Passwo	dd			
Remarks User MAC   Group admin   Period Setting   Permission   System Search   Live   ✓ All   ✓ ACCOUNT   ✓ ACCOUNT   ✓ STORAGE   ✓ EVENT   ✓ SECURITY   ✓ BACKUP   ✓ MAINTENANCE			Confirm Password	
Period Setting Permission System Search Live All ACCOUNT SYSTEM SYSTEM INFO MANUAL CONTROL STORAGE EVENT NETWORK CAMERA SECURITY BACKUP MAINTENANCE	Remarks	dmin		
System       Search       Live         Image: All       Image: System       System info       Image: Manual control         Image: Account       Image: System       Image: System       Image: System info       Image: Manual control         Image: Storage       Image: System       Image: Storage       <	Period			
Image: Security       Image: System information informatin informatintervalet information information informatintervalet i		n Live		
	ACCOUNT	EVENT	NETWORK	
OK Back				

<u>Step 3</u> Configure the settings for the parameters of adding a user account.

Parameter	Description				
Username	Finter a user many and measured for the account				
Password	Enter a user name and password for the account.				
Confirm Password	Re-enter the password.				
Remarks	Optional.				
Remains	Enter a description of the account.				
User MAC	Enter user MAC address				
	Select a group for the account.				
Group					
	The user rights must be within the group permission.				
	Click Setting to display Setting interface.				
Period	Define a period during which the new account can login the device.				
Penou	The new account cannot login the device during the time beyond				
	the set period.				
	In the <b>Permission</b> area, select the check boxes in the <b>System</b> tab,				
	Playback tab, and Monitor tab.				
Permission					
Permission	To manage the user account easily, when defining the user				
	account authority, it is recommended not to give the authority to				
	the common user account higher that the advanced user account.				

Table 5-74

<u>Step 4</u> Click **OK** to complete the settings.

### Setting Permitted Period

# <u>Step 1</u> Next to **Period**, click **Setting**.

The Set interface is displayed.

Figure 5-278

Setting								
Default						OK	Ba	ck

<u>Step 2</u> Define the permitted period. By default, it is active all the time.

- Define the period by drawing.
  - Observe the provided of the second of the

switches to . On the timeline of any selected day, click the half-hour blocks to select the active periods, all the days with . will take the same settings.

timeline of any day, click the half-hour blocks to select the active periods, all the days will take the same settings.

- Define the period by editing. Take Sunday as an example.
- 1) Click 🇱

The **Period** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-279

Period					
Day					
Period 1	00:00	- 24: 00			
Period 2	00:00	- 24: 00			
Period 3	00:00	- 24: 00			
Period 4	00:00	- 24: 00			
Period 5	00:00	- 24: 00			
Period 6	00:00	- 24: 00			
Copy to					
🗌 All					
🖂 Sun					
				OK	Back
				OK	Back

2) Enter the time frame for the period and select the check box to enable the settings.
 ◊ There are six periods for you to set for each day.

- ♦ Under **Copy**, select **All** to apply the settings to all the days of a week, or select specific day(s) that you want to apply the settings to.
- 3) Click **OK** to save the settings.

Step 3 Click OK.

## 5.16.1.2 Modify a User Account

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ACCOUNT > User.

The **User** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-280

	🔔 account			ھ 🖨	<b>\$</b> 0	▣	<b>2</b> ¢		
>	User								
		1	Username	Group Name	Modify	Delete	Status	MAC Address	Remar
	ONVIF User		admin	admin			Local L		admin 's ac
	Password Reset								
		Ad	d						
			<b>u</b>						

Step 2 Click for the user account that you want to modify.

The Modify interface is displayed.

Figure 5-281

Modify				
	admin			
Confirm Password		Unlock Pattern	E E	
Password Hint				
Permission				
System Sea	arch Live			
All				
ACCOUNT	SYSTEM	SYSTEM INFO	MANUAL CONTROL	
✓ STORAGE ✓ SECURITY	✓ EVENT ✓ BACKUP	✓ NETWORK ✓ MAINTENANCE	CAMERA	
			OK	Back

<u>Step 3</u> Change the settings for password, user name, user group, user MAC, memo, period, and authority.

 $\square$ 

The new password can be set from 8 digits through 32 digits and contains at least two types from number, letter and special characters (excluding"", """, ";", ":" and "&"). For the admin account, you enable/disable the unlock pattern and modify password hint.

• To use the unlock pattern, enable **Unlock Pattern**, click **[16]**, draw a pattern in the

Unlock Pattern interface, and then click Save to save the setting.

• Enter password hint text in **Password Hint** box.

<u>Step 4</u> Click **OK** to complete the settings.

### 5.16.1.3 Deleting a User Account

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ACCOUNT > User. The User interface is displayed.

Figure 5-282

🔔 account			۵ 🚱	<b>\$</b> 0	▣	<b></b>			
> User									
Group	1	Username	Group Name	Modify D	elete	Status	MAC Address	Remar	
ONVIF User		admin	admin			Local L		admin 's ac	
Password Reset									
	Ad	ld							

<u>Step 2</u> Click for the user account that you want to delete.

A Message is displayed.

<u>Step 3</u> Click **OK** to delete a user account.

# 5.16.2 Configuring Group Account

## 5.16.2.1 Adding a Group

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ACCOUNT > Group. The GROUP interface is displayed.

Figure	5-283
--------	-------

🔔 ACCOUNT		<b>I</b> 🚱	🚔 🏟 🛡	<b>2</b> 0	LIVE	
User			<b>1</b> 1 1 1 1 1			
> Group		Group Name admin	Modify	Delete	Remarks administrator group	
Password Reset			ľ	ā.		
ONVIF User						
	A	id				

#### Step 2 Click Add.

The **Add** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-284

Add				
Group Name				
System Search	Live			
☐ AII ☐ ACCOUNT ☐ STORAGE ☐ SECURITY	SYSTEM	<ul> <li>☐ SYSTEM INFO</li> <li>☐ NETWORK</li> <li>☐ MAINTENANCE</li> </ul>	☐ MANUAL CONTROL ☐ CAMERA	
			OK Back	

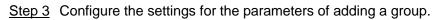


Table 5-75

Parameter	Description
Group Name	Enter a name for the group.

Parameter	Description
Remarks	Optional.
Remarks	Enter a description of the account.
Dermission	In the <b>Permission</b> area, select the check boxes in the <b>System</b> tab,
Permission	Playback tab, and Monitor tab.

<u>Step 4</u> Click **OK** to complete the settings.

## 5.16.2.2 Modifying a Group

### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ACCOUNT > Group.

The **Group** interface is displayed.

💄 account			🛞 🔝 🕻	ŧ., 🛡	<b>2</b> \$	LIVE
User						
> Group	2	Group Name	Мо		Delete	Remarks
v Gloup		admin	J			administrator group
ONVIF User		user	J		ā	user group
Password Reset						
	Ac	ld				

Figure 5-285

<u>Step 2</u> Click for the group account that you want to modify.

<u>Step 3</u> The **Modify** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-286

lodify					
	user				
	user				
	user grou	ıp			
System S	Search	Live			
☐ AII ☐ ACCOUNT ☐ STORAGE ☐ SECURITY		SYSTEM Event Backup	<ul> <li>□ SYSTEM INFO</li> <li>□ NETWORK</li> <li>□ MAINTENANCE</li> </ul>	☑ MANUAL CONTROL	
				ОК	Back

<u>Step 4</u> Change the settings for group name, memo, and authority. <u>Step 5</u> Click **OK** to complete the settings.

## 5.16.2.3 Deleting a Group

### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > ACCOUNT > Group.

The Group interface is displayed.

Figure 5-287

	🔔 account			۵ ک	🔅 🗘	⊽ 💄	LIVE	+
	User							
	Group	2	Group Name		Modify		Remarks	
Ź	Group		admin				administrator group	
	ONVIF User		user		ľ	ā	user group	
	Password Reset							
		Ac	ld					

Step 2 Click for the user account that you want to delete.

A Message is displayed.

<u>Step 3</u> Click **OK** to delete a group.

# 5.16.3 Configuring ONVIF Users

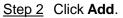
The device manufactured by other company can connect to the Device through ONVIF protocol by an authorized ONVIF account.

The admin account is created for ONVIF users right after the Device has been initialized <u>Step 1</u> Select **Main Menu > ACCOUNT > ONVIF User**.

The **ONVIF User** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-288

			-			 _
🔔 account			🍪 🔝 🍫	🛡 💄		
User						
Group	1	Username	Group Name	Modify	Delete	
> ONVIF User		admin	admin			
Password Reset	Add					

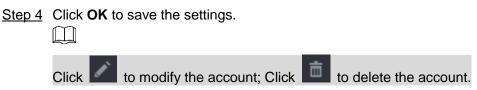


The Add interface is displayed. See Figure 5-289.

Figure 5-289

Username		
Confirm Password		
Group	admin	

<u>Step 3</u> Enter user name, password, and select the group that you want this account to belong to.



# 5.17 Audio Management

Audio management function manages audio files and configures the playing schedule. When there is an alarm event, the audio file can be activated.

# 5.17.1 Configuring Audio Files

You can add audio files, listen to audio files, rename and delete audio files, and configure the audio volume.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > AUDIO > File Management.

The File Management interface is displayed.

Figure 5-290

					_	
<ul> <li>File Management</li> </ul>						
		File Name		Play	Rename	Delete
		Phe Name	5120	1 lay	Rename	Delete
					•	
						Add
						Add

Step 2 Click Add.

The **Add** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-291

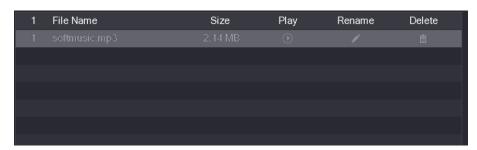
Add					
Device Name	sdb1(USB USB)		Refresh For	nat	
	7.51 GB				
	0.00 KB				
Name		Size	Туре	Delete	
cx					
FOUND.000				ā	
• ###15###					
📄 Salas Ilian 🖬				ā	
				ā	
				۵.	
🗖 схб					
New Folder				OK B	ack

 $\underline{Step \ 3}$  Select the audio files that you want to import.

<u>Step 4</u> Click **OK** to start importing audio files from the USB storage device.

If the importing is successful, the audio files will display in the **File Management** interface.

#### Figure 5-292



The imported audio files are automatically saved into the HDD, so you do not need to connect to the USB storage device to get the file next time.

- Click I to play the audio file.
- Click for rename the audio file.
- Click to delete the audio file.
- To decrease or increase the playing volume, move the slider to the left or to the right.

## 5.17.2 Configuring Playing Schedule for Audio Files

You can configure the settings to play the audio files during the defined time period.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > AUDIO > Audio Play. The Audio Play interface is displayed.

F	Period		File Name	Interval	Loop	Output	
	00:00	- 24 :00	None	60	0	Mic	
	00:00	- 24 :00	None	60	0	Mic	
	00:00	- 24 :00	None	60	0	Mic	
	00:00	- 24 :00	None	60	0	Mic	
	00:00	- 24 :00	None	60	0	Mic	
	00:00	- 24 :00	None	60	0	Mic	

Figure 5-293

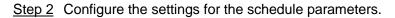


Table 5-76

Parameter	Description				
	In the Period box, enter the time. Select the check box to enable				
Period	the settings.				
	You can configure up to six periods.				
	In the File Name list, select the audio file that you want to play for				
File Name	this configured period.				

Interval	In the Interval box, enter the time in minutes for how often you
Interval	want to repeat the playing.
Papat	Configure how many times you want to repeat the playing in the
Repeat	defined period.
	Includes two options: MIC and Audio. It is MIC by default. The MIC
Output Port	function shares the same port with talkback function and the latter
	has the priority.
$\sim$	

Ш

- The finish time for audio playing is decided by audio file size and the configured interval.
- Playing priority: Alarm event > Talkback > Trial listening > Audio file.

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

# 5.18 Storage Management

Storage management function manages the stored resources such as recorded video files and storage space. The function aims at providing easier operation and improving the storage efficiency.

## 5.18.1 Configuring Basic Settings

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > STORAGE > Basic.

The **Basic** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-294

STORAGE	<b>.</b>	📥 🌣 🛡	<b>L</b> .	
<ul> <li>Basic</li> <li>Schedule</li> <li>Disk Manager</li> <li>Record Mode</li> <li>Disk Group</li> <li>Disk Quota</li> </ul>	Disk Full Create Video Files Delete Expired Files	Cverwrite Time Length Never	▲ ● <p< td=""><td></td></p<>	
Disk Check Rec Estimate FTP				
				Apply Back

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the basic settings parameters.

Table 5-77

Parameter	Description				
Disk Full	<ul> <li>Configure the settings for the situation all the read/write discs are full.</li> <li>Select Stop to stop recording</li> <li>Select Overwrite to overwrite the recorded video files always from the earliest time.</li> </ul>				
Create Video Files	Configure the time length and file length for each recorded video.				
Delete Expired Files	Configure whether to delete the old files and if yes, configure t days.				

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

# 5.18.2 Configuring the Recording and Snapshot Schedule

The system starts recording and taking snapshot according to the configured schedule. For details, see "5.1.4.9 Configuring Recorded Video Storage Schedule" and "5.1.4.10 Configuring Snapshot Storage Schedule."

## 5.18.3 Configuring Disk Manager

You can view the HDD information, format HDD, and configure the HDD type through HDD manager.

### Step 1 Select Main Menu > STORAGE > Disk Manager.

The **Disk Manager** interface is displayed.

In the table, you can view the information of current HDD, such as device name, HDD type, status, total space and free space, and serial number of the HDD port.

	STORAGE			<b>-</b>	🚐 🌣.	▣	<b>L</b> .	LIVE	L .	00
						~	-*			
			D	evice Name	Physical Positi		Properties	Health Status	Free S <sub>I</sub>	
>							Read/Write 🔻			
	Record Mode									
		For	nat					Apply	Back	

<u>Step 2</u> Configuring the settings for the HDD manager.

- HDD type setting: In the **Properties** list, select **Read/Write**, **Read Only**, and then click **Apply** to save the settings.
- HDD format: Select the HDD that you want to format, click Format, and enable Clear HDD database in the pop-up message, click OK and enter the password of admin user in the prompted dialog box, click OK and then following the on-screen instructions to complete formatting.
- Formatting HDD will erase all data on the disk, proceed with caution.

Note
Data will be cleared. Are you sure to continue formatting?
Clear HDD database
OK Cancel

Figure 5-296

# 5.18.4 Configuring Record

Record type includes auto and manual record. You can configure record type of main stream and sub stream. See "5.7 Configuring Record Settings".

## 5.18.5 Configuring Advance Settings

Create HDD group, and save main stream, sub stream and snapshot of designated channels to the HDD group.



- If the interface displays that "Current HDD Mode is Quota Group", click "Change to HDD Group Mode", and then configure HDD group.
- You can enable either HDD Group Mode or Quota Group. The system prompts to reboot the device each time when you switch the mode.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > STORAGE > Disk Group > Disk Group.

The **Disk Group** interface is displayed.

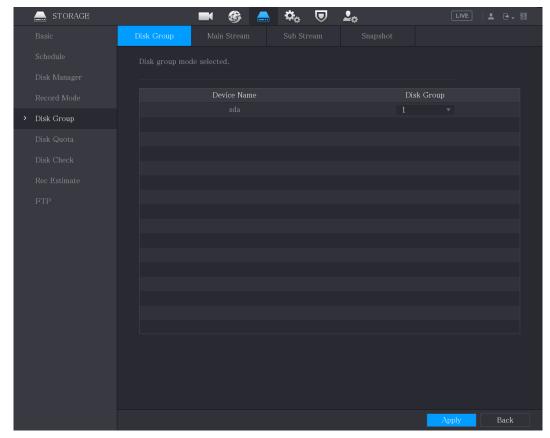


Figure 5-297

<u>Step 2</u> Select group for each HDD, and then click **Apply** to complete the settings.

<u>Step 3</u> After configuring HDD group, click **Main Stream**, **Sub Stream** and **Snapshot** tabs respectively, to configure the saving of main stream, sub stream and snapshot information of different channels to different HDD groups.

### Figure 5-298

	STORAGE	<b>I</b> 🛞	🚔 🌣 🛡 /	<b>L</b>	
		Main Stream	Sub Stream		
			▼ Copy to All		
>	Disk Group				
					Apply Back

Figure 5-299

STORAGE	<b>•</b> 🛞	🛋 🌣 🛡	<b>L</b>	
		Sub Stream		
		▼ Copy to All		
Disk Group				
				Apply Back

### Figure 5-300

Basic     Disk Group     Main Stream     Sub Stream     Snapshot       Schedule     Disk group mode selected.     Disk Group Channel     Disk Group Channel     Disk Group Channel       Poisk Group     Disk Group     Disk Group Channel     Disk Group Channel     Disk Group Channel       Disk Quota     Disk Cheek       FTP	STORAGE	🚔 🌣 🛡 🚣	
Record Mode       Apply to All       I       Copy to All         > Disk Group       Channel       Disk Group       Channel       Disk Group       Channel       Disk Group         Disk Quota       1       1       2       1       3       1       4       1       •         Disk Check       Rec Estimate       Estimate <th></th> <th>Sub Stream Snapshot</th> <th></th>		Sub Stream Snapshot	
1     1     2     1     3     1     4     1     *       Disk Quota     5     1     *     6     1     *     7     1     *     8     1     *       Disk Check     Rec Estimate     - <th>Record Mode</th> <th></th> <th></th>	Record Mode		
	Disk Quota Disk Check		
	FTP		

<u>Step 4</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

## 5.18.6 Configuring Disk Quota

By configuring quota, allocate fixed storage capacity to each channel, and distribute the storage space of each channel reasonably.



- If the interface displays that "Current HDD Mode is HDD Group", click "Change to Quota Mode", and then configure quota.
- You can enable either HDD Group Mode or Quota Group. The system prompts to reboot the device each time when you switch the mode.
- Step 1 Select Main Menu > STORAGE > Disk Quota.

The **Disk Quota** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-301

	STORAGE		<b>• •</b>	🔔 🌣	<b>▽</b> <u>L</u> <sub>¢</sub>		LIVE	
				Are you	ı sure you want			
						Disk Quota		
		SATA1			SATA2			
>								
	FTP							
							Apply	

- <u>Step 2</u> Select the channels you want to configure, and select quota from the drop-down list of corresponding HDD.
- <u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.
  - $\square$

Click **Quota Statistics** to view the quota of each channel in HDD. See Figure 5-302. Figure 5-302

Q	Quota Statistics					
	1	Channel	Dick Queta			
			DiskQuota			
		Other	2.72 ТВ			

# 5.18.7 Configuring HDD Detecting Settings

 $\square$ 

Not all models support this function.

HDD detecting function detects the current status of HDD to let you know the HDD performance and replace the defective HDD.

## 5.18.7.1 Checking HDD

You can detect HDD by key area detect and global detect.

The Manual Check interface is displayed.

- Key area detect: Detect the files saved in HDD. The detected bad track can be repaired by formatting. If there are no files in HDD, the system cannot detect the bad track.
- Global detect: Detect the whole HDD through Windows, which takes time and might affect the HDD that is recording the video.

#### Step 1 Select Main Menu > STORAGE > Disk Check > Manual Check.

Basic
Munual Clued
Check Report

Schedulø

Disk Manager

Record Mode

Disk Croup

Disk Check

Rec Estimate

FTP

FTP

FTP

Image: Stork Check

Rec Estimate

FTP

Image: Stork Check

Rec Estimate

FTP

Image: Stork Check

Rec Estimate

FTP

Image: Stork Check

Image: Stork Check

Image: Stork Check

Image: Stork Check

Rec Estimate

FTP

Image: Stork Check

<tr

Figure 5-303

<u>Step 2</u> In the **Type** list, select **Key Area Detect** or **Global Check**; and in the **Disk** list, select the HDD that you want to detect.

Step 3 Click Start Check.

The system starts detecting the HDD. After detecting is completed, see Figure 5-304.

During detecting, click **Pause** to pause detecting, click **Continue** to restart detecting, and click **Stop Detect** to stop detecting.

	STORAGE	<b>I</b> (6)	📥 🌣	▣	<b>L</b> <sub>o</sub>	
	Basic	eck Check Report				
		Key Area Detect		Host-1		Start Check Stop Check
					OK Bad	Blocked
					Fotal Checked	
						2794.52 GB
>						
	Rec Estimate					1 8 MB/S
						о мыл 5 100.00 %
				F		

#### Figure 5-304

### 5.18.7.2 View Detecting Results

After the detecting is completed, you can view the detecting reports to find out the problem and replace the defective HDD to avoid data loss.

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > STORAGE > Disk Check > Check Report.

The Check Report interface is displayed.

Figure 5-305

Disk No.	Check Type	Start Time	Total Space	E
	Quick Check	2020-01-05 19:37:32		

Step 2 Click

The Details interface is displayed. You can view detecting results and S.M.A.R.T reports.

Figure 5-306

Details						
Results	S.M.A.R.T					
Type Quick Che		Export sea	rch results.			
			<ul> <li>OK</li> <li>= 1244 MB</li> <li>Total Checke</li> <li>Total Space</li> <li>Error</li> <li>Disk No.</li> <li>Bad Sector Li</li> <li>No. Sec</li> </ul>	ed	Blocked	

Figure 5-307

ResultsS.M.A.R.TNamesdaModelHGSTHUS724030ALA640SNPN1231P8G0W19THealth StatusOKDescription:IDAttribute1Read Error Rate1695954587572Through Put Perfromance5Start/Stop Count0989899335Reallocated Sector Count1Turent Value17Nume1810019100 <th>Det</th> <th>ails</th> <th></th> <th></th> <th></th> <th></th> <th></th> <th></th> <th></th> <th></th>	Det	ails								
ModelHGSTHUS724030ALA640SNPN1231P8G0W19THealth StatusOKDescription:Description:IDAttributeThresholdValueWorstCurrent ValueHe1Read Error Rate169595458757P2Through Put Perfromance5413513585P3Spin Up Time24253253197P4Start/Stop Count098989933P5Reallocated Sector Count510010058P				S.M.A.R.T						
ModelHGSTHUS724030ALA640SNPN1231P8G0W19THealth StatusOKDescription:Description:IDAttributeThresholdValueWorstCurrent ValueHe1Read Error Rate169595458757P2Through Put Perfromance5413513585P3Spin Up Time24253253197P4Start/Stop Count098989933P5Reallocated Sector Count510010058P										
N 29N1231P8G0W19THealth Status OKDescription:IDAttributeThresholdValueWorstCurrent ValueHe1Read Error Rate169595458757Image: Colspan="5">Current ValueHe2Through Put Perfromance5413513585Image: Colspan="5">Current ValueHe3Spin Up Time24253253197Image: Colspan="5">Current ValueHe4Start/Stop Count098989933Image: Colspan="5">Current ValueHe5Reallocated Sector Count510010058Image: Colspan="5">Current Value		Name		sda						
Health StatusOKDescription:IDAttributeThresholdValueWorstCurrent ValueHe1Read Error Rate169595458757P2Through Put Perfromance5413513585P3Spin Up Time24253253197P4Start/Stop Count098989933P5Reallocated Sector Count510010058I		Model		HGSTHUS724	030ALA64	0				
Description:IDAttributeThresholdValueWorstCurrent ValueHe1Read Error Rate169595458757F2Through Put Perfromance5413513585F3Spin Up Time24253253197F4Start/Stop Count098989933F5Reallocated Sector Count510010058F		SN		PN1231P8G0V	V19T					
IDAttributeThresholdValueWorstCurrent ValueHe1Read Error Rate169595458757=2Through Put Perfromance5413513585=3Spin Up Time24253253197=4Start/Stop Count098989933=5Reallocated Sector Count510010058=		Health St	atus	ОК						
1       Read Error Rate       16       95       95       458757         2       Through Put Perfromance       54       135       135       85         3       Spin Up Time       24       253       253       197         4       Start/Stop Count       0       98       98       9933         5       Reallocated Sector Count       5       100       100       58		Descriptio	on:							
2       Through Put Perfromance       54       135       135       85         3       Spin Up Time       24       253       253       197         4       Start/Stop Count       0       98       98       9933         5       Reallocated Sector Count       5       100       100       58		ID		Attribute		Threshold	Value	Worst	Current Value	He▲
3         Spin Up Time         24         253         253         197           4         Start/Stop Count         0         98         98         9933           5         Reallocated Sector Count         5         100         100         58 <ul> <li>Count</li> <li>Count</li></ul>				Read Error Ra	te		95	95	458757	
4Start/Stop Count0989899335Reallocated Sector Count510010058-			Thro	ugh Put Perfro	mance	54	135	135	85	
5 Reallocated Sector Count 5 100 100 58 🗸				Spin Up Time		24	253	253	197	
				Start/Stop Cou	ınt		98	98	9933	
▲			Real	located Sector	Count		100	100	58	
		•								

## 5.18.8 Configuring Record Estimate

Record estimate function can calculate how long you can record video according to the HDD capacity, and calculate the required HDD capacity according to the record period.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > STORAGE > Rec Estimate.

The **Rec Estimate** interface is displayed.

STORAGE			🍪 📥 i	¢. 🛡 🖇	¢	LIVE 💄 🗗 🗸
	✓ Channel	Modify	Bit Rate(Kb/S)	Record Time	Resolution	Frame Rate(FPS)
		Niouny	4096	24	2560x1440(2560x1440)	25
		ľ				
		ľ				
		ľ				
		ľ			1920x1080(1080P)	
	By Space	Ву	r Time			
	Total Space Time Note: The rec	0 O cord estima			GB Sele	

#### Figure 5-308

Step 2 Click

The **Modify** dialog box is displayed.

You can configure the resolution, frame rate, bit rate and record time for the selected channel.

<u>Step 3</u> Click **OK** to save the settings.

Then the system will calculate the time period that can be used for storage according to the channels settings and HDD capacity.

Ш

Click **Copy to** to copy the settings to other channels.

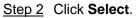
### Calculating Recording Time

<u>Step 1</u> On the **Rec Estimate** interface, click the **By Space** tab.

The **By Space** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-309

By Space	By Time		
		TB = 0	GB Select
		Days	
Note: The reco		e only. Please be cautic	



The Select Disk(s) interface is displayed.

<u>Step 3</u> Select the check box of the HDD that you want to calculate.

In the **By Time** tab, in the **Time** box, the recording time is displayed.

Figure 5-310



### Calculating HDD Capacity for Storage

The **By Time** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-311

By Space	By Time		
Time	0	Days	
		]TB =	GB
Note: The recor			us when evaluating record period.

<u>Step 2</u> In the **Time** box, enter the time period that you want to record.

In the Total Space box, the required HDD capacity is displayed.

Figure	5-312
--------	-------

By Space	By Time	
Time		Days
		$TB = \boxed{707} GB$
Note: The recor		e only. Please be cautious when evaluating record period.

# 5.18.9 Configuring FTP Storage Settings

You can store and view the recorded videos and snapshots on the FTP server.

### Preparation for Configuration

Purchase or download a FTP server and install it on your PC.

Ш

For the created FTP user, you need to set the write permission; otherwise the upload of recorded videos and snapshots might be failed.

### **Configuration Steps**

<u>Step 1</u> Select **Main Menu > STORAGE > FTP**. The **FTP** interface is displayed.

<sup>&</sup>lt;u>Step 1</u> On the **Rec Estimate** interface, click the **By Time** tab.

	STORAGE		: 🚔 🌣 🛡	<b>L</b> <sub>o</sub>	
			FTP O S		
>					
			Sun		
			00:00 - 24:00		
			00:00 - 24:00		
			Setting		
		Default Test			Apply Back

Figure 5-313

 $\underline{Step \ 2} \quad Configure \ the \ settings \ for \ the \ FTP \ settings \ parameters.$ 

Table	5-78
-------	------

Parameter	Description			
Enable	Enable the FTP upload function.			
ETD type	FTP: Plaintext transmission.			
FTP type	SFTP: Encrypted transmission (recommended)			
Server Address	IP address of FTP server.			
Port	FTP: The default is 21.			
POIL	SFTP: The default is 22.			
Anonymous	Enter the user name and password to login the FTP server.			
Username	Enable the anonymity function, and then you can log			
Password	anonymously without entering the user name and password.			
	Create folder on FTP server.			
	• If you do not enter the name of remote directory, system			
	automatically creates the folders according to the IP and			
Storage Dath	time.			
Storage Path	• If you enter the name of remote directory, the system creates			
	the folder with the entered name under the FTP root			
	directory first, and then automatically creates the folders			
	according to the IP and time.			

Parameter	Description
File Size	<ul> <li>Enter the length of the uploaded recorded video.</li> <li>If the entered length is less than the recorded video length, only a section of the recorded video can be uploaded.</li> <li>If the entered length is more than the recorded video length, the whole recorded video can be uploaded.</li> <li>If the entered length is 0, the whole recorded video will be uploaded.</li> </ul>
Picture Upload Interval (Sec.)	<ul> <li>If this interval is longer than snapshot interval, the system takes the recent snapshot to upload. For example, the interval is 5 seconds, and snapshot interval is 2 seconds per snapshot, the system uploads the recent snapshot every 5 seconds.</li> <li>If this interval is shorter than snapshot interval, the system uploads the snapshot per the snapshot interval. For example, the interval is 5 seconds, and snapshot interval. For example, the interval is 5 seconds, and snapshot interval is 10 seconds per snapshot, the system uploads the snapshot per the snapshot interval is 10 seconds.</li> <li>To configure the snapshot interval, select Main Menu &gt; CAMERA &gt; Encode &gt; Snapshot.</li> </ul>
Channel	Select the channel that you want to apply the FTP settings.
Day	Select the week day and set the time period that you want to
Period 1, Period 2	upload the recorded files. You can set two periods for each week day.
Record type	Select the record type (Alarm, Intel, MD, and General) that you want to upload. The selected record type will be uploaded during the configured time period.

Step 3 Click Test.

The system pops up a message to indicate success or failure. If failed, check the network connection or configurations.

<u>Step 4</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

# **5.19 Security Center**

You can set security options to strengthen device security and use the device in a much safer way.

## 5.19.1 Security Status

Security scanning helps get a whole picture of device security status. You can scan user, service and security module status for detailed information about the security status of the device.

**Detecting User and Service** 

 $\square$ 

Green icon represents a healthy status of the scanned item, and orange icon represents a risky status.

- Login authentication: When there's a risk in the login authentication, the icon will be in orange to warn risk. You can click **Details** to see the detailed risk description.
- Configuration Security: When there's a risk in the device configuration, the icon will be in orange to warn risk. You can click **Details** to see the detailed risk description.

#### Figure 5-314

SECURITY	🖬 🍪 🚐 🎎 🛡 💃
Security Status System Service	Security Status The last scanning time: 2020-01-11 16:35:15 Rescan
Attack Defense	Security scanning can help you get a whole picture of device security status in real time and use the device i
CA Certificate	<ul> <li>User &amp; Service Detection(Detect whether the current configuration conforms to recommendation.)</li> </ul>
A/V Encryption Security Warning	Configuratio Login Authe
	Details
	1 items can be optimized. You are recommended to op Ignore
	HTTPS Security Configuration Optimize
	1.Disabled. It is recommended to enable.

#### Scanning Security Modules

This area shows the running status of security modules. For details about the security modules, move mouse pointer on the icon to see the on-screen instructions.

### Scanning Security Status

You can click **Rescan** to scan security status.

## 5.19.2 System Service

You can set DVR basic information such as basic services, 802.1x and HTTPS.

### 5.19.2.1 Basic Services

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > SECURITY > System Service > Basic Services.

The **Basic Services** interface is displayed.

	SECURITY	l.	H 🍪 🐣	🌣 🛡	<b>₽</b> ⇔	LIVE	
		Basic Services					
>			cations				
	CA Certificate						
		NTP Server					
			covery				
			Nuth Security M	Mode (Recommendee			
						Apply	Cancel

Figure 5-315

<u>Step 2</u> Select **Basic Services** and configure parameters.

 $\square$ 

There might be safety risk when **Mobile Push Notifications**, **CGI**, **ONVIF**, **SSH** and **NTP Server** is enabled.

Table 5-79

Parameter	Description
Mobile Push Notifications	After enabling this function, the alarm triggered by the NVR can be pushed to a mobile phone. This function is enabled by default. There might be safety risk if this service is enabled. Disable this function when it is not in use.

Parameter	Description			
CGI	If this function is enabled, the remote devices can be added through the CGI protocol. This function is enabled by default.			
ONVIF	If this function is enabled, the remote devices can be added through the ONVIF protocol. This function is enabled by default.			
NTP Server	After enabling this function, a NTP server can be used to synchronize the device. This function is enabled by default.			
SSH	After enabling this function, you can use SSH service. This function is disabled by default.			
	There might be safety risk if this service is enabled. Disable this function when it is not in use.			
Enable Device Discovery	After enabling this function, the device can be searched by other devices.			
Private Protocol Authentication Mode	<ul> <li>Security Mode (Recommended): Uses Digest access authentication when connecting to DVR.</li> <li>Compatible Mode: Select this mode when the client does not support Digest access authentication.</li> </ul>			

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

## 5.19.2.2 802.1x

The device needs to pass 802.1x certification to enter the LAN.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > SECURITY > System Service > 802.1x.

The 802.1x interface is displayed.

SECURITY		n 🊱 🖲	نې 💭	<b>≜</b> ⇔	LIVE	
	Basic Services	802.1x				
		NIC 1				
CA Certificate						
		PEAP				
					Apply	Back

<u>Step 2</u> Select the Ethernet card you want to certify.

<u>Step 3</u> Select **Enable** and configure parameters.

Table	5-80
-------	------

Parameter	Description
NIC Name	Select a NIC.
Authentication	<ul> <li>PEAP: protected EAP protocol.</li> <li>TLS: Transport Layer Security. Provide privacy and data integrity between two communications application programs.</li> </ul>
CA Certificate	Enable it and click <b>Browse</b> to import CA certificate from flash drive. For details about importing and creating a certificate, see 5.19.4.
Username	The username shall be authorized at server.
Password	Password of the corresponding username.

<u>Step 4</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

## 5.19.2.3 HTTPS

We recommend that you enable HTTPS function to enhance system security.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > SECURITY > System Service > HTTPS.

The HTTPS interface is displayed.

Figure	5-317
--------	-------

SECURITY			. 🚓 🛡	<b>L</b> <sub>\$\$</sub>	
Security Status	Basic Services	802.1x	HTTPS	<b>₩</b> \$	
	Basic Services	802.1X	нпрз		
<ul> <li>System Service</li> </ul>	Enable				
Attack Defense	To enhance s	ystem security, the	e Web,ONVIF,RTSP	,CGI service can be a	ccessed to device via
CA Certificate	HTTPS.				
A/V Encryption	Select a device certificate Certificate Management				
Security Warning	No. Ce	rtificate Serial Nur	nber Valid	Period	
			2050-	01-03 16:15:34	
					Apply Back

- <u>Step 2</u> Select **Enable** to enable HTTPS function.
- <u>Step 3</u> Click **Certificate Management** to create or import a HTTPS certificate from USB drive. For details about importing or creating a CA certificate, see 5.19.4.
- <u>Step 4</u> Select a HTTPS certificate.
- <u>Step 5</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

## 5.19.3 Attack Defense

### 5.19.3.1 Firewall

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > SECURITY > Attack Defense > Firewall. The Firewall interface is displayed.

	SECURITY			🌣 🛡	<b>L</b> ‡	LIVE	
	Security Status	Firewall					
>	Attack Defense						
				e following list to ac			
			Host IP/MAC		Port	Modify	Delete
		Add					
						Apply	Back

Figure 5-318

<u>Step 2</u> Select **Enable** to enable firewall.

<u>Step 3</u> Configure the parameters.

### Table 5-1 Firewall parameters

Parameter	Description
Mode	Mode can be configured when Type is Network Access.
	If White List is enabled, you can visit device port successfully
	with IP/MAC hosts in the white list.
	<ul> <li>If Black List is enabled, you cannot visit device port with IP/MAC hosts in black list.</li> </ul>
Add	When Type is Network Access, you can configure IP Address, IP Segment and MAC Address.
Туре	You can select IP address, IP segment and MAC address.
IP Address	Enter IP Address, Start Port and End Port that is allowed or
Start Port	forbidden.
End Port	When Type is IP Address, they can be configured. Start Port and
	End Port can be configured only in Network Access Type.

Parameter	Description
Start Address/End Address	Enter Start Address and End Address of IP Segment.
MAC Address	Enter MAC Address that is allowed or forbidden

<u>Step 4</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

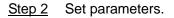
### 5.19.3.2 Account Lockout

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > SECURITY > Attack Defense > Account Lockout.

The **Account Lockout** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-319

Security Status       Firewall       Account Lockout       Anti-DoS Attack       Sync Time-Whitelist         System Service       An account will be temporarily locked after 5 failed login attempts. It cannot log in for 5 minutes.         Attack Defense       Login Attempt       5         CA Certificate       Intervention       5         A/V Encryption       Security Warning       Intervention         Security Warning       Intervention       Intervention         Intervention       Interventi
Attack Defense       Login Attempt         CA Certificate       Lock Time         A/V Encryption       5
CA Certificate Lock Time 5 min.
A/V Encryption
Security Warning
Apply Back



Parameter	Description
Attempt(s)	Set the maximum number of allowable wrong password entries. The account will be locked after your entries exceed the maximum number. Value range: 5–30. Default value: 5.
Lock Time	Set how long the account is locked for. Value range: 5–120 minutes. Default value: 5 minutes.

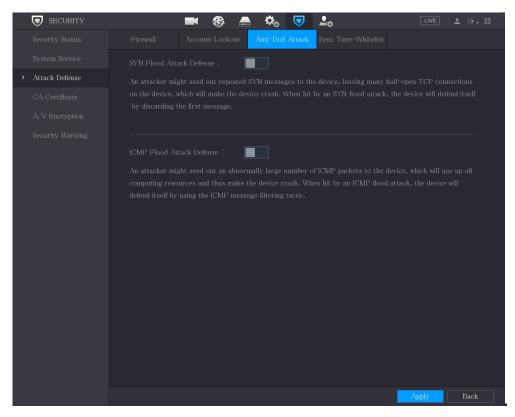
Table 5-81

Step 3 Click Apply to complete the settings.

## 5.19.3.3 Anti-Dos Attack

You can enable **SYN Flood Attack Defense** and **ICMP Flood Attack Defense** to defend the device against Dos attack. See Figure 5-320.

#### Figure 5-320



## 5.19.3.4 Sync Time-Whitelist

## Ш

The synchronization is only allowed with hosts in the trusted list.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > SECURITY > Attack Defense > Sync Time-Whitelist.

The Sync Time-Whitelist interface is displayed.

Figure 5-321

_						
SECURITY			🔆 🗢	<b>L</b> o	LIVE	
Security Status				Sync Time-Whitelist		
System Service						
> Attack Defense				in the trusted list.		
CA Certificate						
A/V Encryption		Host IP/MAC		Modify	Delete	
Security Warning						
	Add					
					Apply	Back

<u>Step 2</u> Select **Enable** to enable **Sync Time-Whitelist** function.

<u>Step 3</u> Configure the parameters.

Tab	le	5-82
iuo	i C	0 02

Parameter	Description
Add	You can add trusted hosts for time synchronization.
Туре	Select IP address or IP segment for hosts to be added.
IP Address	Input the IP address of a trusted host.
Start Address	Input the start IP address of trusted hosts.
End Address	Input the end IP address of trusted hosts.

<u>Step 4</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

## 5.19.4 CA Certificate

You can create or import device certificate and install trusted CA Certificate.

## 5.19.4.1 Device Certificate

**Create Certificate** 

1. Select Main Menu > SECURITY > CA Certificate > Device Certificate.

The Device Certificate interface is displayed.

 $\square$ 

- Click I to download the certificate to local storage.
- Click to delete the certificate. The deleted certificate cannot be restored, proceed with caution.

Security Status       Device Certificate       Trusted CA Cert         System Service       A device certificate is a proof of device legal status. For example, when the browser is visiting device via HTTPS, the device certificate shall be verified.         Attack Defense       CA Certificate         CA Certificate       Create Certificate         Create Certificate       CA Application and Import	
Attack Defense       visiting device via HTTPS, the device certificate shall be verified.         > CA Certificate       Create Certificate         CA Certificate       Create Certificate	
CA Certificate     Create Certificate     CA Application and Import     Import Third-party Certificate	
Create Certificate CA Application and Import Import Third-party Certificate	
Create Certificate CAApplication and import minfort mind-party Certificate	
A/V Encryption No. Certificate Serial Number Valid Period Used by Defa	.1+
Security Warning 1 2050-01-03 16:15:34 General, HTTPs, RTSPO	111

### Figure 5-322

2. Configure parameters.

Table 5-83

Parameter	Description
County	This parameter is user defined.
State	This parameter is user defined.
City Name	This parameter is user defined.

Parameter	Description
Valid Period	Input a valid period for the certificate.
Organization	This parameter is user defined.
Organization Unit	This parameter is user defined.
Domain Name	Input the IP address of the certificate.

3. Click Create.

## CA Application and Import

Follow the on-screen instructions to finish CA application and import.



Insert a USB flash drive before operating.

Figure 5-323

CA Application and Import	
request file. Step 2: Submit the certifica institution to apply for a ce	ertificate' and then import the CA certificate
Type Create Certifica	
Country	
City Name	
Valid Period	
Organization	
Organization Unit	
Domain Name	alig og bigen
	Create Cancel

## Import Third-Party Certificate

Insert the USB flash drive with third-party certificate before importing.

1. Select Import Third-party Certificate.

Figure 5-324

Import Third-party Certi	ficate		
Path			Browse
Private Key			Browse
Private Key Password			
		Import	Cancel

2. Configure Parameters.

Table 5-2 Importing third-party certificate

Parameter	Description
Path	Click <b>Browse</b> to find the third-party certificate path on the USB drive.
Private Key	Click <b>Browse</b> to find the third-party certificate private key on the USB drive.
Private Key Password	Input the password of encrypted private key. When the private key is not encrypted, you don't need to this parameter.

3. Click Create.

## 5.19.4.2 Trusted CA Certificate

- <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > SECURITY > CA Certificate > Trusted CA Certificate.
- <u>Step 2</u> Click Install Trusted Certificate.

The Create Certificate is displayed.

Figure 5-	325
-----------	-----

SECURITY	<b>e</b> 🚱 📥	🌣 😈 上o		
Security Status	Device Certificate Trusted CA Cert			
System Service	Install Trusted Certificate			
Attack Defense	No. Certificate Serial Number	Valid Period	Used by	Download D
> CA Certificate				<u>*</u>
A/V Encryption				
Security Warning				
	Create Certificate			
	Path	Browse		
		Diowse		
		Import Cancel		
				,

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Browse** to select the certificate that you want to install.

Step 4 Click Import.

## 5.19.5 Audio/Video Encryption

The device supports audio and video encryption during data transmission.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > SECURITY > A/V Encryption > Audio/Video Transmission. The Audio/Video Transmission interface is displayed.

SECURITY	🖿 🍪 📥 🎭 🦁 🚣 💷 💷 🕮
Security Status	Audio/Video Tr
System Service	Private Protocol
Attack Defense	Enable Stream transmission is encrypted by using private protocol.
CA Certificate	Encryption Type AES256-OFB -
> A/V Encryption	Update Period of S 12 hr.
Security Warning	RTSP over TLS
	Enable RTSP stream is encrypted by using TLS tunnel before transmission.
	Select a device certificate Certificate Management
	No. Certificate Serial Number Valid Period
	√ 1 2050-01-03 16:15:34
	Apply Back

<u>Step 2</u> Configure parameters.

Table	5-84
-------	------

Table 5-84						
Area	Parameter	Description				
	Enable	Enables stream frame encryption by using private protocol.				
Private Protocol	Encryption Type	Use the default setting.				
	Update Period of Secret Key	Secret key update period. Value range: 0–720 hours. 0 means never update the secret key. Default value: 12.				
RTSP over TLS	Enable	Enables RTSP stream encryption by using TLS.				
	Select a device certificate	Select a device certificate for RTSP over TLS.				

Area	Parameter	Description
	Certificate Management	For details about certificate management, see 5.19.4.1.

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

## 5.19.6 Security Warning

## 5.19.6.1 Security Exception

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > SECURITY > Security Warning > Security Exception. The Security Exception interface is displayed.

SECURITY		🍪 🛋 🌣	<b>I</b>	
Security Status	Security Exception Ille	gal Login		
System Service				
Attack Defense				
CA Certificate				
A/V Encryption		Setting		
> Security Warning				
		✓ Log		
		None		
				Apply Back

Figure 5-327

<u>Step 2</u> Select **Enable** and configure parameters.

Table 5-85

Parameter	Description
Alarm-out Port	The alarm device (such as lights, sirens, etc.) is connected to the alarm output port. When an alarm occurs, the NVR device transmits the alarm information to the alarm device.
Post-Alarm	When the alarm ends, the alarm extended for a period of time. The time range is from 0 seconds to 300 seconds.

Parameter	Description
Show Message	Check box to enable a pop-up message in your local host PC.
Buzzer	Select the check box to activate the buzzer when an alarm occurs.
Alarm Tone	Check the box and then select the corresponding audio file from the dropdown list. System plays the audio file when the alarm occurs.
Log	Select the check box, the NVR device records the alarm information in the log when an alarm occurs.
Send Email	Select the check box. When an alarm occurs, the NVR device sends an email to the set mailbox to notify the user. To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in Main Menu > NETWORK > Email.
0	<ul> <li>Security Event monitoring explanation. It indicates the type of attacks that can trigger security exception.</li> <li>Unauthorized executable program trying to run</li> <li>Web URL brute-force attack</li> <li>Session connection overload</li> <li>Session ID brute-force attack</li> </ul>

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

## 5.19.6.2 Illegal Login

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > SECURITY > Security Warning > Illegal Login.

The **Illegal Login** interface is displayed.

	SECURITY			چ 🖨	¢.	▣	<b>L</b>	[	LIVE	٤ (	
		Security Exception	Illega	l Login							
	A/V Encryption			Setting							
				🖌 Log							
				None							
								Ар	oly	Ba	ck

<u>Step 2</u> Select **Enable** and configure parameters.

Table 5-86	Та	ble	5-	86
------------	----	-----	----	----

Parameter	Description
Alarm-out Port	The alarm device (such as lights, sirens) is connected to the alarm output port. When an alarm occurs, the NVR device transmits the alarm information to the alarm device.
Post-Alarm	When the alarm ends, the alarm extended for a period of time. The time range is from 0 seconds through 300 seconds.
Buzzer	Select the check box to activate the buzzer when an alarm occurs.
Alarm Tone	Check the box and then select the corresponding audio file from the dropdown list. System plays the audio file when the alarm occurs.
Log	Select the check box, the NVR device records the alarm information in the log when an alarm occurs.
Send Email	Select the check box. When an alarm occurs, the NVR device sends an email to the set mailbox to notify the user. To use this function, make sure the email function is enabled in Main Menu > NETWORK > Email.

## **5.20 Configuring System Settings**

## 5.20.1 Configuring General System Settings

You can configure the device basic settings, time settings, and holiday settings.

To configure the holiday settings, do the following:

## Step 1 Select Main Menu > SYSTEM > General > Holiday.

The **Holiday** interface is displayed.

Figure 5-329

🔅 system		🏵 🛋	<b>\$</b> 0	▣ ♣		LIVE	L →
> General		&Time	Holiday				
	atus	Name	D	Date	Duration	Operation	
						Add	



The Add interface is displayed.

Figure 5-330

Effective Mode	🔘 Once			
Period	🔘 Date			
Start Time		- 01	- 07	
End Time		- 01	- 07	
Add More				

- <u>Step 3</u> Configure the holiday name, repeat mode, time range according to your actual situation.
- Step 4 Click Add.

The added holiday information is displayed.

```
Ш
```

Enable the **Add More** function, so you can continue adding holiday information. Figure 5-331

🛱 system		<b>e 🔅 </b>	🏡 🛡 上	ŧ	LIVE	
> General		Date&Time	Holiday			
	1 Statu:	s Name	Date	Duration	Operation	
	1	io	1.5	1 Days	r 🖻	
					Add	

## 5.20.2 Configuring RS-232 Settings

You can configure serial port function, Baud rate and other parameters.

Only some series products support this RS-232.

## Select Main Menu > SYSTEM > RS232.

The **RS232** interface is displayed.

GENERAL		Consola	
> RS232	Function	Console	
× K3232	Baud Rate	115200	
	Data Bits	8	
	Stop Bits	1	
	Parity	None	





Parameter	Description							
Function	<ul> <li>Select serial port control protocol.</li> <li>Console: Upgrade the program and debug with the console and mini terminal software.</li> <li>Keyboard: Control this Device with special keyboard.</li> <li>Adapter: Connect with PC directly for transparent transmission of data.</li> <li>Protocol COM: Configure the function to protocol COM, in order to overlay card number.</li> <li>PTZ Matrix: Connect matrix control.</li> <li>It is Console by default.</li> </ul>							
Baud Rate	Select Baud rate, which is 115200 by default.							
Data Bits	It ranges from 5 to 8, which is 8 by default.							
Stop Bits	It includes 1 and 2.							
Parity	It includes none, odd, even, mark and null. It is none by default.							

## **5.20.3 Configuring System Maintenance Settings**

When the Device has been running for a long time, you can configure the auto reboot when the Device is not working. You can also configure the case fan mode to reduce noise and extend the service life.

#### <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > MAINTAIN > Manager > Maintenance.

The Maintenance interface is displayed.

MAINTAIN 🖌	& _	<u>,                                    </u>	S 🕧	🗘 📮 🎧	LIVE	💄 💽 🗸 😳
Log	Maintenance					
System Info						
Network	Never					
> Manager						
	Always					
					Apple	Back
					Apply	Dack

<u>Step 2</u> Configure the settings for the system maintenance parameters.

#### Table 5-88

Parameter	Description
Auto Reboot	In the Auto Reboot list, select the reboot time.
Case Fan Mode	In the <b>Case Fan Mode</b> list, you can select <b>Always</b> or <b>Auto</b> . If you select <b>Auto</b> , the case fan will stop or start according to the external conditions such as the Device temperature.

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Apply** to complete the settings.

## 5.20.4 Exporting and Importing System Settings

You can export or import the Device system settings if there are several Devices that require the same setup.

 $\square$ 

- The IMP/EXP interface cannot be opened if the backup operation is ongoing on the other interfaces.
- When you open the IMP/EXP interface, the system refreshes the devices and sets the current directory as the first root directory.
- Click Format to format the USB storage device.

## **Exporting System Settings**

## <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > MAINTAIN > Manager > Import/Export. The Import/Export interface is displayed.

MAINTAIN	⊗	<b>)</b> <u>s</u> (	S 🧰 🏷	<b>-</b>	
Log	Maintenance	Import/Export	Default	Update	
System Info Network	Device Name			efresh Format	
> Manager					
	Name			Туре	Delete
	New Folder				Import Export

Figure 5-334

<u>Step 2</u> Insert a USB storage device into one of the USB ports on the Device.

<u>Step 3</u> Click **Refresh** to refresh the interface.

The connected USB storage device is displayed.

C MAINTAIN		🧕 📑 🕥 🦚		pdate	LIVE	L 🗗 - 🗒
		Delaul				
		sdb1(USB USB)	▼ Refresh	Format		
		28.91 GB				
Manager		27.96 GB				
	Name			Туре	Delete	
	<ul> <li>A 10 - 10 - 10</li> </ul>					
	🗅 System Volume II				亩	
	<ul> <li>Brits 5.5 - 6.</li> </ul>					
	<ul> <li>BBC28-0.1</li> </ul>				亩	
	sc 📄				ā	
	🗖 gwh					
	📮 ipc				ā	
					ā	
			3.66 MB		±۵	
					±۵	
			716 B	File	亩	

### Step 4 Click Export.

There is a folder under the name style of "Config\_[YYYYMMDDhhmmss]". Double-click this folder to view the backup files.

## Importing System Settings

- <u>Step 1</u> Insert a USB storage device containing the exported configuration files from another Device) into one of the USB ports on the Device.
- <u>Step 2</u> Select Main Menu > SYSTEM > Import/Export. The Import/Export interface is displayed.
- <u>Step 3</u> Click **Refresh** to refresh the interface.

The connected USB storage device is displayed.

- <u>Step 4</u> Click on the configuration folder (under the name style of "Config\_[YYYYMMDDhhmmss]") that you want to import.
- Step 5 Click Import.

The Device will reboot after the imported is succeeded.

## 5.20.5 Restoring Default Settings

 $\square$ 

Only Admin account supports this function.

You can select the settings that you want to restore to the factory default.

Step 1 Select Main Menu > MAINTAIN > Manager > Default.

The **Default** interface is displayed.

🕰 MAINTAIN	🛇 🤳 🙊 晶 🚫 🥢 💋 💻 🎧 🛛 Live 🔺 🖽
Log	Maintenance Import/Export Default Update
System Info	Default All the parameters will be restored to default settings except network, user management
Network	and so on.
> Manager	Factory Defaults Completely recover device parameters to factory default.
	actory perants Completely recover device parameters to factory default.
	Back

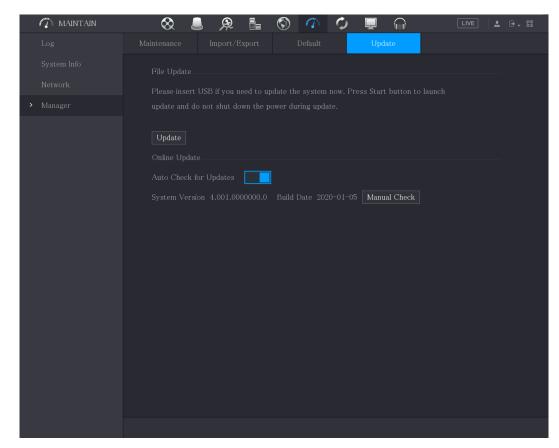
Step 2 Restore the settings.

- Click **Default** to restore all parameters to default settings except parameters such as network, user management.
- Click **Factory Default**, select **OK** and then enter the password of admin user in the prompted dialog box to completely recover device parameters to factory default.

## 5.20.6 Updating the Device

## 5.20.6.1 Updating File

- <u>Step 1</u> Insert a USB storage device containing the upgrade files into the USB port of the Device.
- <u>Step 2</u> Select Main Menu > MAINTAIN > Manager > Update. The Update interface is displayed.



Step 3 Click Upgrade.

The **Upgrade** interface is displayed.



Device Name	sdb1(USB USB)		Refresh For	mat	
	28.91 GB				
	27.96 GB				
Name		Size	Туре	Delete	
				<b>市</b>	
🗀 System Volume				ā	
<ul> <li>Bits: [10-5];</li> </ul>				ā	
				ā	
				ā	
sc 📄				亩	
📮 gwh				亩	
📮 ipc				亩	
File Name					

<u>Step 4</u> Click the file that you want to upgrade.

The selected file is displayed in the Address box.

Step 5 Click OK.

## 5.20.6.2 Performing Online Upgrade

When the Device is connected to Internet, you can use online upgrade function to upgrade the system.

Before using this function, you need to check whether there is any new version by auto check or manual check.

- Auto check: The Device checks if there is any new version available at intervals.
- Manual check: Perform real-time check whether there is any new version available.



Ensure the correct power supply and network connection during upgrading; otherwise the upgrading might be failed.

#### Step 1 Select Main Menu > MAINTAIN > Manager > Update.

The Update interface is displayed.

Figure 5-339

MAINTAIN 🌮	🛇 🍯	) 🙊 🖫 (	🕥 🌈 🔇	<b>-</b>	LIVE 💄 🗗 🗸 🔡
Log			Default	Update	
System Info					
Network					
> Manager					
	<b>Update</b> Online Updat Auto Check f				
		on 4.001.0000000.0	Build Data 2020-01-0	15 Manual Check	
			Junu Date 2020 01 C	Manual Check	

<u>Step 2</u> Check whether there is any new version available.

- Auto check : Enable Auto-check for updates.
- Manual check: Click Manual Check.

The system starts checking the new versions. After checking is completed, the check result is displayed.

- If the "It is the latest version" text is displayed, you do not need to upgrade.
- If the text indicating there is a new version, go the step 3.

Step 3 Click Upgrade now.

## 5.20.6.3 Uboot Upgrading



- Under the root directory in the USB storage device, there must be "u-boot.bin.img" file and "update.img" file saved, and the USB storage device must be in FAT32 format.
- Make sure the USB storage device is inserted; otherwise the upgrading cannot be performed.

When starting the Device, the system automatically check whether there is a USB storage device connected and if there is any upgrade file, and if yes and the check result of the upgrade file is correct, the system will upgrade automatically. The Uboot upgrade can avoid the situation that you have to upgrade through +TFTP when the Device is halted.

## **5.21 Viewing Information**

You can view the information such as log information, HDD information, and version details

## 5.21.1 Viewing Version Details

You can view the version details such as device model, system version, and build date. Select **Main Menu > INFO > VERSION**, the **VERSION** interface is displayed.

	<ul> <li>INFO</li> </ul>			LIVE	<b>.</b> 6	
>	VERSION	Device Model	XVR8216A-4KL-I			
	LOG	Record Channel				
	EVENT	Alarm In				
	HDD	Alarm Out Hardware Version	3 V1.0			
	CHANNEL INFO BPS	System Version Build Date	V4.200.0000000.0 2018-10-10			
		Web Version	V3.2.7.104657			
		SN				
		Onvif Server Version	16.12(V1.2.2.596777)			
		Security Baseline Version	V1.3			

## 5.21.2 Viewing Log Information

You can view and search the log information.

 $\square$ 

- If there is no HDD installed, the system can save up to 10,000 logs.
- If there is HDD installed and has been formatted, the system can save up to 500,000 logs.
- If there is HDD installed, the logs about system operations are saved in the memory of the Device and other types of logs are saved into the HDD. If there is no HDD installed, the other types of logs are also saved in the memory of the Device.
- When formatting the HDD, the logs will not be lost. However, if you take out the HDD from the Device, the logs might be lost.

## <u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > INFO > LOG.

The **LOG** interface is displayed.

VERSION         Type         All           > LOG         Start Time         2018 - 01 - 29         00 : 00 : 00           EVENT         End Time         2018 - 01 - 29         00 : 00 : 00           NETWORK         0         Log Time         Event           HDD         0         Log Time         Event           BPS         0         Log Time         Event	INFO				LIVE 💄 🕒 🗸	
Start Time        2018        0        Start Time        2018        0        Start Time        Start Time        2018        0        Start Time        Start Time        Start Time        Start Time        Start Time        Start Time        2018        Start Time						
EVENT       Start Time       2018 - 01 - 29       00 : 00 : 00       Search         NETWORK       0       Log Time       Event       Image: Comparison of the comparison of	LOG					
End Time       2018 - 01 - 29       00 : 00 : 00       Search         HDD  <		Start Time	2018 - 01 - 29	00 : 00 : 00		
0       Log lime       Event         HDD		End Time	2018 - 01 - 29	00 : 00 : 00	Search	h
		0 Log Time	Event			
BPS	HDD					
	CHANNEL INFO					
	BPS					
					Detaild	
Clear						
					Clear	

Figure 5-340

- <u>Step 2</u> In the **Type** list, select the log type that you want to view (**System**, **Config**, **Storage**, **Record**, **Account**, **Clear**, **Playback**, and **Connection**) or select **All** to view all logs.
- <u>Step 3</u> In the **Start Time** box and **End Time** box, enter the time period to search, and then click **Search**.

The search results are displayed.

🚯 INFO				LIVE	💄 🕒 - 🗒
VERSION					
> LOG	Туре	All			
	Start Time	2018 - 01 - 30	00 : 00 : 00		
EVENT	End Time	2018 -01 -31	00:00:00		Search
NETWORK	39 Log Tim	ne Event			
HDD		-30 14:51:11 Save <n< td=""><td>IETWORK&gt; config!</td><td></td><td></td></n<>	IETWORK> config!		
			ount<1>, Current Work	ing HDD	
CHANNEL INFO		-30 14:51:22 Save <f< td=""><td></td><td></td><td></td></f<>			
BPS	28 2018-01	-30 14:51:22 Save <f< td=""><td>2P&gt; config!</td><td></td><td></td></f<>	2P> config!		
	29 2018-01	-30 14:51:31 Save <f< td=""><td>PIR Alarm&gt; config!</td><td></td><td></td></f<>	PIR Alarm> config!		
	30 2018-01	-30 14:51:56 S.M.A.F	R.T INFO		
	31 2018-01	-30 14:51:56 S.M.A.F	LT INFO		
	32 2018-01	-30 14:52:31 Add Gro	up <admin></admin>		
	33 2018-01	-30 14:52:31 Add Gro	up <user></user>		
	34 2018-01	-30 14:52:31 Add Use	er <onvif:admin></onvif:admin>		
	35 2018-01	-30 14:52:31 User log	ged in. <admin></admin>		
		-30 14:52:35 Save <0			
		-30 14:52:36 Save <n< td=""><td></td><td></td><td></td></n<>			
		-30 14:52:39 Save <0			
	39 2018-01	-30 14:53:10 User loc	iged in.<127.0.0.1>		•
			1/1 > Go	To 1 Backup	Details
					Clear

## $\square$

- Click **Details** or double-click the log that you want to view, the **Detailed Information** interface is displayed. Click **Next** or **Previous** to view more log information.
- Click **Backup** to back up the logs into the USB storage device.
- Click **Clear** to remove all logs.

## 5.21.3 Viewing Event Information

You can view the event information of the Device and channel.

Select Main Menu > INFO > EVENT, the EVENT interface is displayed.

Figure 5-342

INFO					LIVE	٤	🕂 - 💭	
VERSION	Alarm Type Video Loss	134567	′ 8	Alarm Status				
EVENT		104007	0					
NETWORK								
HDD								
CHANNEL INFO								
BPS								
	Refresh							

## **5.21.4 Viewing Network Information**

You can view the online users, network data transmission details, and test network. For details about testing network, see "5.15.2.1 Testing the Network."

## 5.21.4.1 Viewing Online Users

You can view the online user information and block any user for a period of time.

Select **Main Menu > INFO > NETWORK > Online users**, the **Online users** interface is displayed.

	info info					LIVE 📃 💄 🕒	- EC
	VERSION	Online User	Network Load	Network 1	Test		
	LOG						
	EVENT		Name	IP	User Login Time	Block	÷ .
>	NETWORK	adı	nin 19	92.168.12.133	2017-12-06 17:01:50	20	
	HDD						
	CHANNEL INFO						
	BPS						
		Block	60	Sec			

Figure 5-343

To block an online user, click and then enter the time that you want to block this user. The maximum value you can set is 65535.

The system detects every 5 seconds to check whether there is any user added or deleted, and update the user list timely.

## 5.21.4.2 Viewing the Network Load

Network load means the data flow which measures the transmission capability. You can view the information such as data receiving speed and sending speed.

<u>Step 1</u> Select Main Menu > INFO > NETWORK > Network Load.

The Network Load interface is displayed.

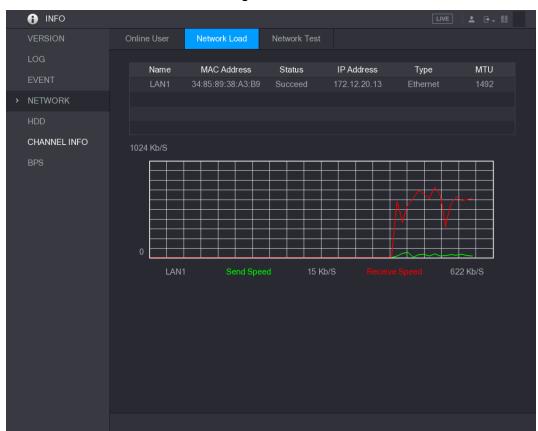


Figure 5-344

Step 2 Click the LAN name that you want to view, for example, LAN1.

The system displays the information of data sending speed and receiving speed.

- The default display is LAN1 load.
- Only one LAN load can be displayed at one time.

## 5.21.5 Viewing HDD Information

You can view the HDD quantity, HDD type, total space, free space, status, and S.M.A.R.T information.

Select Main Menu > INFO > HDD, the HDD interface is displayed.

					L	VE 上 🕂 🕫
VERSION	1*	Device Name	Physical Position	Туре	Total Space	Free Space
LOG	All			-	2.72 TB	0.00 MB
EVENT	1*	sda	main board-1	Read/Write	2.72 TB	0.00 MB
NETWORK						
HDD						
CHANNEL INFO						
BPS						

Figure 5-345

Table 5-89

Parameter	Description
No.	Indicates the number of the currently connected HDD. The asterisk (*)
INO.	means the current working HDD.
Device Name Indicates name of HDD.	
Physical Position	Indicates installation position of HDD.
Туре	Indicates HDD type.
Total Space	Indicates the total capacity of HDD.
Free Space	Indicates the usable capacity of HDD.
Status	Indicates the status of the HDD to show if it is working normally.
S.M.A.R.T	View the S.M.A.R.T reports from HDD detecting.

## **5.21.6 Viewing Channel Information**

You can view the camera information connected to each channel.

Select Main Menu > INFO > CHANNEL INFO, the CHANNEL INFO interface is displayed.

	-		
	info		
	VERSION		
		Channel	Format
	LOG		
	EVENT		1080P 🔵
	NETWORK		
	NETWORK		
	HDD		
,	CHANNEL INFO		
, i			
	BPS		

## 5.21.7 Viewing Data Stream Information

You can view the real-time data stream rate and resolution of each channel. Select Main Menu > INFO > BPS, the BPS interface is displayed.

Figure 5-347

	INFO		LIVE	
	VERSION			
		Channel Kb/S Resolution Wave		
	LOG	1 109 2560*1440		
	EVENT	2 2057 1920*1080		
	NETWORK	3 108 2560*1440		
	HDD	4 109 2560*1440		
	CHANNEL INFO	5 109 2560*1440		
		6 111 2560*1440		
>	BPS	7 110 2560*1440		
		8 110 2560*1440		

## 5.22 Logout the Device

On the top right of the Main Menu interface or on any interface after you have entered the Main

Menu, click

- Select Logout, you will log out the device.
- Select **Reboot**, the Device will be rebooted.
- Select **Shutdown**, the Device will be turned off.

# **6** Web Operations

## $\square$

- The interfaces in the Manual are used for introducing the operations and only for reference.
   The actual interface might be different dependent on the model you purchased. If there is inconsistency between the Manual and the actual product, the actual product shall govern.
- The Manual is a general document for introducing the product, so there might be some functions described for the Device in the Manual not apply to the model you purchased.
- Besides Web, you can use our Smart PSS to login the device. For detailed information, please refer to Smart PSS user's manual.

## 6.1 Connecting to Network

 $\square$ 

- The factory default IP of the Device is 192.168.1.108.
- The Device supports monitoring on different browsers such as Safari, fire fox, Google on Apple PC to perform the functions such as multi-channel monitoring, PTZ control, and device parameters configurations.
- <u>Step 1</u> Check to make sure the Device has connected to the network.
- <u>Step 2</u> Configure the IP address, subnet mask and gateway for the PC and the Device. For details about network configuration of the Device, see "5.1.4.4 Configuring Network Settings."
- <u>Step 3</u> On your PC, check the network connection of the Device by using "ping \*\*\*.\*\*\*.\*\*\*". Usually the return value of TTL is 255.

## 6.2 Logging in the Web

<u>Step 1</u> Open the IE browser, enter the IP address of the Device, and then press Enter. The Login in dialog box is displayed.

	Figure 6-1	
		Web Login
<b>.</b>		
û		
ТСР		
	Login	

<u>Step 2</u> Enter the user name and password.

 $\square$ 

- The default administrator account is **admin**. The password is the one that was configured during initial settings. To security your account, it is recommended to keep the password properly and change it regularly.
- Click et al. to display the password.

Step 3 Click Login.

## 6.3 Introducing Web Main Menu

After you have logged in the Web, the main menu is displayed.

Figure 6-2

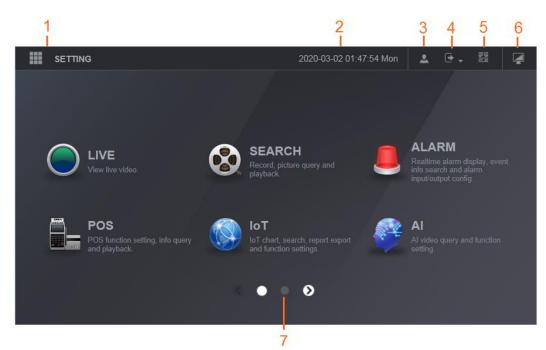


Table 6-1

No.	Icon	Description
		Includes configuration menu through which you can configure camera
1		settings, network settings, storage settings, system settings, account
		settings, and view information.
2	None	Displays system date and time.
3	•	When you point to, the current user account is displayed.
4		Click , select Logout, Reboot, or Shutdown according to your actual situation.

No.	lcon	Description
<b>NO.</b>		<ul> <li>Displays Cell Phone Client and Device SN QR Code.</li> <li>Cell Phone Client: Use your mobile phone to scan the QR code to add the device into the Cell Phone Client, and then you can start accessing the Device from your cell phone.</li> <li>Device SN: Obtain the Device SN by scanning the QR code. Go to the P2P management platform and add the Device SN into the platform. Then you can access and manage the device in the WAN. For details, please refer to the P2P operation manual. You can also configure P2P</li> </ul>
6		function in the local configurations. See "5.1.4.5 Configuring P2P Settings." Displays the web main menu.
7	None	<ul> <li>Includes eight function tiles: LIVE, VIDEO, ALARM, IoT, AI, BACKUP, DISPLAY, and AUDIO. Click each tile to open the configuration interface of the tile.</li> <li>LIVE: You can perform the operations such as viewing real-time video, configuring channel layout, setting PTZ controls, and using smart talk and instant record functions if needed.</li> <li>VIDEO: Search for and play back the recorded video saved on the Device.</li> <li>ALARM: Search for alarm information and configure alarm event actions.</li> <li>IoT: You can view, search and export the temperature and humidity data of camera and configure the alarm event settings.</li> <li>BACKUP: Search and back up the video files to the local PC or external storage device such as USB storage device.</li> <li>DISPLAY: Configure the display effect such as displaying content, image transparency, and resolution, and enable the zero-channel function.</li> <li>AUDIO: Manage audio files and configure the playing schedule. The audio file can be played in response to an alarm event if the voice prompts function is enabled.</li> </ul>

# **7** FAQ

## 1. DVR cannot boot up properly.

There are following possibilities:

- Input power is not correct.
- Power connection is not correct.
- Power switch button is damaged.
- Program upgrade is wrong.
- HDD malfunction or something wrong with HDD jumper configuration.
- Seagate DB35.1, DB35.2, SV35 or Maxtor 17-g has compatibility problem. Please upgrade to the latest version to solve this problem.
- Front panel error.
- Main board is damaged.

## 2. DVR frequently shuts down or stops running.

There are following possibilities:

- Input voltage is not stable or it is too low.
- HDD malfunction or something wrong with jumper configuration.
- Button power is not enough.
- Front video signal is not stable.
- Working environment is too harsh, too much dust.
- Hardware malfunction.

#### 3. Hard disk cannot be detected.

There are following possibilities:

- HDD is broken.
- HDD jumper is damaged.
- HDD cable connection is loose.
- Main board SATA port is broken.

#### 4. There is no video output whether it is one-channel, multiple-channel or all-channel output.

There are following possibilities:

- Program is not compatible. Please upgrade to the latest version.
- Brightness is 0. Please restore factory default setup.
- There is no video input signal or it is too weak.
- Check privacy mask setup or your screen saver.
- DVR hardware malfunctions.

#### 5. Real-time video color is distorted.

There are following possibilities:

- When using BNC output, NTSC and PAL setup is not correct. The real-time video becomes black and white.
- DVR and monitor resistance is not compatible.
- Video transmission is too long or degrading is too huge.
- DVR color or brightness setup is not correct.

#### 6. Cannot search local records.

- HDD jumper is damaged.
- HDD is broken.
- Upgraded program is not compatible.
- The recorded file has been overwritten.
- Record function has been disabled.

## 7. Video is distorted when searching local records.

There are following possibilities:

- Video quality setup is too low.
- Program read error, bit data is too small. There is mosaic in the full screen. Please restart the DVR to solve this problem.
- HDD data jumper error.
- HDD malfunction.
- DVR hardware malfunctions.

#### 8. No audio under monitor state.

There are following possibilities:

- It is not a power picker.
- It is not a power acoustics.
- Audio cable is damaged.
- DVR hardware malfunctions.

#### 9. There is audio under monitor state but no audio under playback state.

There are following possibilities:

- Setup is not correct. Please enable audio function.
- Corresponding channel has no video input. Playback is not continuous when the screen is blue.

#### 10. System time is not correct.

There are following possibilities:

- Setup is not correct.
- Battery contact is not correct or voltage is too low.
- Crystal oscillator is broken.

### 11. Cannot control PTZ on DVR.

There are following possibilities:

- Front panel PTZ error.
- PTZ decoder setup, connection or installation is not correct.
- Cable connection is not correct.
- PTZ setup is not correct.
- PTZ decoder and DVR protocol is not compatible.
- PTZ decoder and DVR address is not compatible.
- When there are several decoders, please add 120 Ohm between the PTZ decoder A/B cables furthest end to delete the reverberation or impedance matching. Otherwise the PTZ control is not stable.
- The distance is too far.

#### 12. Motion detection function does not work.

- Period setup is not correct.
- Motion detection zone setup is not correct.
- Sensitivity is too low.

• For some versions, there is hardware limit.

## 13. Cannot log in client-end or web.

There are following possibilities:

- For Windows 98 or Windows ME user, please update your system to Windows 2000 sp4. Or you can install client-end software of lower version. Please note right now, our DVR is not compatible with Windows VISTA control.
- ActiveX control has been disabled.
- No dx8.1 or higher. Please upgrade display card driver.
- Network connection error.
- Network setup error.
- Password or user name is invalid.
- Client-end is not compatible with DVR program.

#### 14. There is only mosaic no video when preview or playback video file remotely.

There are following possibilities:

- Network fluency is not good.
- Client-end resources are limit.
- There is multiple-cast group setup in DVR. This mode can result in mosaic. Usually we do not recommend this mode.
- There is privacy mask or channel protection setup.
- Current user has no right to monitor.
- DVR local video output quality is not good.

#### **15. Network connection is not stable.**

There are following possibilities:

- Network is not stable.
- IP address conflict.
- MAC address conflict.
- PC or DVR network card is not good.

#### 16. Burn error /USB back error.

There are following possibilities:

- Burner and DVR are in the same data cable.
- System uses too much CPU resources. Please stop record first and then begin backup.
- Data amount exceeds backup device capacity. It might result in burner error.
- Backup device is not compatible.
- Backup device is damaged.

#### 17. Keyboard cannot control DVR

There are following possibilities:

- DVR serial port setup is not correct.
- Address is not correct.
- When there are several switchers, power supply is not enough.
- Transmission distance is too far.

#### 18. Alarm signal cannot be disarmed.

- Alarm setup is not correct.
- Alarm output has been open manually.
- Input device error or connection is not correct.
- Some program versions might have this problem. Please upgrade your system.

#### **19. Alarm function is null.**

There are following possibilities:

- Alarm setup is not correct.
- Alarm cable connection is not correct.
- Alarm input signal is not correct.
- There are two loops connect to one alarm device.

#### 20. Remote control does not work.

There are following possibilities:

- Remote control address is not correct.
- Distance is too far or control angle is too small.
- Remote control battery power is low.
- Remote control is damaged or DVR front panel is damaged.

#### 21. Record storage period is not enough.

There are following possibilities:

- Camera quality is too low. Lens is dirty. Camera is installed against the light. Camera aperture setup is not correct.
- HDD capacity is not enough.
- HDD is damaged.

#### 22. Cannot playback the downloaded file.

There are following possibilities:

- There is no media player.
- No DXB8.1 or higher graphic acceleration software.
- There is no DivX503Bundle.exe control when you play the file transformed to AVI via media player.
- No DivX503Bundle.exe or ffdshow-2004 1012 .exe in Windows XP OS.

#### 23. Forgot local menu operation password or network password

Please contact your local service engineer or our sales person for help. We can guide you to solve this problem.

#### 24. When I login via HTTPS, a dialogue says the certificate for this website is for other address.

Please create server certificate again.

#### 25. When I login via HTTPS, a dialogue says the certificate is not trusted.

Please download root certificate again.

#### 26. When I login via HTTPS, a dialogue says the certificate has expired or is not valid yet.

Please make sure your PC time is the same as the device time.

#### 27. I connect the general analog camera to the device, there is no video output.

There are following possibilities:

- Check camera power supplying, data cable connection and other items.
- This series device does not support the analog camera of all brands. Please make sure the device supports general standard definition analog camera.

## 28. I connect the standard definition analog camera or the coaxial camera to the device, there is no video output.

There are following possibilities:

• Check camera power supplying, or camera data cable connection.

 For the product supports analog standard definition camera/HD camera, you need to go to the Main Menu > CAMERA > CHANNEL TYPE to select corresponding channel type and then restart the DVR.

## 29. I cannot connect to the IP channel.

There are following possibilities:

- Check the camera is online or not.
- Check IP channel setup is right or not (such as IP address, user name, password, connection protocol, and port number).
- The camera has set the whitelist (Only the specified devices can connect to the camera).

## 30. After I connected to the IP channel, the one-window output is OK, but there is no

## multiple-window output.

There are following possibilities:

- Check the sub stream of the camera has been enabled or not.
- Check the sub stream type of the camera is H.264 or not.
- Check the device supports camera sub stream resolution or not (such as 960H, D1, and HD1).

# 31. After I connected to the IP channel, the multiple-window output is OK, but there is no one-window output.

There are following possibilities:

- Check there is video from the IP channel or not. Please go to the Main Menu > INFO > BPS to view bit stream real-time information.
- Check the main stream of the camera has been enabled or not.
- Check the main stream type of the camera is H.264 or not.
- Check the device supports camera main stream resolution or not (such as 960H, D1, and HD1).
- Check camera network transmission has reached the threshold or not. Please check the online user of the camera.

## 32. After I connected to the IP channel, there is no video output in the one-window or the multiple-window mode. But I can see there is bit stream.

There are following possibilities:

- Check the main stream/sub stream type of the camera is H.264 or not.
- Check the device supports camera main stream/sub stream resolution or not (such as 1080P, 720P, 960H, D1, and HD1).
- Check the camera setup. Please make sure It supports the products of other manufacturers.

#### 33. DDNS registration failed or cannot access the device domain name.

There are following possibilities:

- Check the device is connected to the WAN. Please check the device has got the IP address if the PPPoE can dial. If there is a router, please check the router to make sure the device IP is online.
- Check the corresponding protocol of the DDNS is enabled. Check the DDNS function is OK or not.
- Check DNS setup is right or not. Default Google DNS server is 8.8.8.8, 8.8.5.5. You can use different DNS provided by your ISP.

## 34. I cannot use the P2P function on my cell phone or the WEB.

- Check the device P2P function is enabled or not. (Main menu->Setting->Network->P2P)
- Check the device is in the WAN or not.
- Check cell phone P2P login mode is right or not.
- It is the specified device P2P login port or not when you are using P2P client.
- Check user name or password is right or not.
- Check P2P SN is right or not. You can use the cell phone to scan the QR code on the device P2P interface (Main Menu > Network > P2P), or you can use the version information of the WEB to confirm. (For some previous series products, the device SN is the main board SN, it might result in error.)

### 35. I connect the standard definition camera to the device, there is no video output.

There are following possibilities:

- Check the DVR supports standard definition signal or not. Only some series product supports analog standard definition signal, coaxial signal input.
- Check channel type is right or not. For the product supports analog standard definition camera/HD camera, you need to go to the Main Menu > CAMERA > CHANNEL TYPE to select corresponding channel type (such as analog) and then restart the DVR. In this way, the DVR can recognize the analog standard definition.
- Check camera power supplying, or camera data cable connection.

## 36. I cannot connect to the IP camera.

There are following possibilities:

- Check DVR supports IP channel or not. Only some series products support A/D switch function, it can switch analog channel to the IP channel to connect to the IP camera. From Main Menu > CAMERA > CHANNEL TYPE, select the last channel to switch to the IP channel. Some series product products support IP channel extension, it supports N+N mode.
- Check the IPC and the DVR is connected or not. Please go to the Main Menu >
   CAMERA > REGISTRATION to search to view the IP camera is online or not. Or you can
   go to the Main Menu > INFO > NETWORK > Network Test, you can input IP camera IP
   address and then click the Test button to check you can connect to the IP camera or not.
- Check IP channel setup is right or not (such as IP address, manufacturer, port, user name, password, and remote channel number).

## Daily Maintenance

- Please use the brush to clean the board, socket connector and the chassis regularly.
- The device shall be soundly earthed in case there is audio/video disturbance. Keep the device away from the static voltage or induced voltage.
- Please unplug the power cable before you remove the audio/video signal cable, RS-232 or RS-485 cable.
- Do not connect the TV to the local video output port (VOUT). It might result in video output circuit.
- Always shut down the device properly. Please use the shutdown function in the menu, or you can press the power button in the front panel for at least three seconds to shut down the device. Otherwise it might result in HDD malfunction.
- Please make sure the device is away from the direct sunlight or other heating sources. Please keep the sound ventilation.
- Please check and maintain the device regularly.

Abbreviations	Full term
BNC	Bayonet Nut Connector
CBR	Constant Bit Rate
CIF	Common Intermediate Format
DDNS	Dynamic Domain Name Service
DHCP	Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol
DNS	Domain Name System
DST	Daylight Saving Time
DVR	Digital Video Recorder
FTP	File Transfer Protocol
HDD	Hard Disk Drive
HDMI	High Definition Multimedia Interface
HTTP	Hyper Text Transfer Protocol
loT	Internet of Things
IP	Internet Protocol
IVS	Intelligent Video System
LAN	Local Area Network
MAC	Media Access Control
MTU	Maximum Transmission Unit
NTP	Network Time Protocol
NTSC	National Television Standards Committee
ONVIF	Open Network Video Interface Forum
PAL	Phase Alteration Line
PAT	Port Address Translation
POS	Point of Sale
PPPoE	Point-to-Point Protocol over Ethernet
PSS	Professional Surveillance Software
PTZ	Pan Tilt Zoom
RCA	Radio Corporation of American
RTSP	Real Time Streaming Protocol
S.M.A.R.T	Self-Monitoring-Analysis and Reporting Technology
SATA	Serial Advanced Technology Attachment
SMTP	Simple Mail Transfer Protocol
SNMP	Simple Network Management Protocol
ТСР	Transmission Control Protocol
TFTP	Trivial File Transfer Protocol
UDP	User Datagram Protocol
UPnP	Universal Plug and Play
VBR	Variable Bit Rate

The abbreviations in this glossary are related to the Manual.

Abbreviations	Full term
VGA	Video Graphics Array
WAN	Wide Area Network

Calculate total capacity needed by each DVR according to video recording (video recording type and video file storage time).

<u>Step 1</u> According to Formula (1) to calculate storage capacity  $q_i$  that is the capacity of each channel needed for each hour, unit MB.

Formula (1): 
$$q_i = d_i \div 8 \times 3600 \div 1024$$

In the formula:  $d_i$  means the bit rate, unit Kbit/s

<u>Step 2</u> After video time requirement is confirmed, according to Formula (2) to calculate the storage capacity  $m_i$ , which is storage of each channel needed unit MB.

Formula (2): 
$$m_i = q_i \times h_i \times D_i$$

In the formula:

- $h_i$  means the recording time for each day (hour)
- $D_i$  means number of days for which the video shall be kept
- <u>Step 3</u> According to Formula (3) to calculate total capacity (accumulation)  $q_T$  that is needed for all channels in the DVR during **scheduled video recording**.

Formula (3): 
$$q_T = \sum_{i=1}^{c} m_i$$

In the formula: c means total number of channels in one DVR

<u>Step 4</u> According to Formula (4) to calculate total capacity (accumulation)  $q_T$  that is needed for all channels in DVR during **alarm video recording (including motion detection)**.

Formula (4): 
$$q_T = \sum_{i=1}^c m_i \star a\%$$

In the formula: a% means alarm occurrence rate

You can refer to the following table for the file size in one hour per channel. (All the data listed below are for reference only.)

Bit Stream Size (max)	File Size	Bit Stream Size (max)	File Size
96Kbps	42MB	128Kbps	56MB
160Kbps	70MB	192Kbps	84MB
224Kbps	98MB	256Kbps	112MB
320Kbps	140MB	384Kbps	168MB
448Kbps	196MB	512Kbps	225MB

Bit Stream Size (max)	File Size	Bit Stream Size (max)	File Size
640Kbps	281MB	768Kbps	337MB
896Kbps	393MB	1024Kbps	450MB
1280Kbps	562MB	1536Kbps	675MB
1792Kbps	787MB	2048Kbps	900MB

## Appendix 3.1 Compatible USB list

Manufacturer	Model	Capacity	
Sandisk	Cruzer Micro	512MB	
Sandisk	Cruzer Micro	1GB	
Sandisk	Cruzer Micro	2GB	
Sandisk	Cruzer Freedom	256MB	
Sandisk	Cruzer Freedom	512MB	
Sandisk	Cruzer Freedom	1GB	
Sandisk	Cruzer Freedom	2GB	
Kingston	DataTraveler II	1GB	
Kingston	DataTraveler II	2GB	
Kingston	DataTraveler	1GB	
Kingston	DataTraveler	2GB	
Maxell	USB Flash Stick	128MB	
Maxell	USB Flash Stick	256MB	
Maxell	USB Flash Stick	512MB	
Maxell	USB Flash Stick	1GB	
Maxell	USB Flash Stick	2GB	
Kingax	Super Stick	128MB	
Kingax	Super Stick	256MB	
Kingax	Super Stick	512MB	
Kingax	Super Stick	1GB	
Kingax	Super Stick	2GB	
Netac	U210	128MB	
Netac	U210	256MB	
Netac	U210	512MB	
Netac	U210	1GB	
Netac	U210	2GB	
Netac	U208	4GB	
Teclast	Ti Cool	128MB	
Teclast	Ti Cool	256MB	
Teclast	Ti Cool	512MB	
Teclast	Ti Cool	1GB	
Sandisk	Cruzer Micro	2GB	
Sandisk	Cruzer Micro	8GB	
Sandisk	Ti Cool	2GB	
Sandisk	Hongjiao	4GB	
Lexar	Lexar	256MB	

Manufacturer Model		Capacity
Kingston	Data Traveler	1GB
Kingston	Data Traveler	16GB
Kingston	Data Traveler	32GB
Aigo	L8315	16GB
Sandisk	250	16GB
Kingston	Data Traveler Locker+	32GB
Netac	U228	8GB

## Appendix 3.2 Compatible SD Card list

Manufacturer	Standard	Capacity	Card type
Transcend	SDHC6	16GB	Big
Kingston	SDHC4	4GB	Big
Kingston	SD	2GB	Big
Kingston	SD	1GB	Big
Sandisk	SDHC2	8GB	Small
Sandisk	SD	1GB	Small

## Appendix 3.3 Compatible Portable HDD list

Manufacturer	Model	Capacity
YDStar	YDstar HDD box	40GB
Netac	Netac	80GB
Iomega	Iomega RPHD-CG" RNAJ50U287	250GB
WD Elements	WCAVY1205901	1.5TB
Newsmy	Liangjian	320GB
WD Elements	WDBAAR5000ABK-00	500GB
WD Elements	WDBAAU0015HBK-00	1.5TB
Seagate	FreeAgent Go(ST905003F)	500GB
Aigo	H8169	500GB

## Appendix 3.4 Compatible USB DVD List

Manufacturer	Model
Samsung	SE-S084
BenQ	LD2000-2K4

## Appendix 3.5 Compatible SATA DVD List

Manufacturer	Model
LG	GH22NS30

Manufacturer	Model
Samsung	TS-H653 Ver.A
Samsung	TS-H653 Ver.F
Samsung	SH-224BB/CHXH
SONY	DRU-V200S
SONY	DRU-845S
SONY	AW-G170S
Pioneer	DVR-217CH

## Appendix 3.6 Compatible SATA HDD List

## 

Please upgrade the DVR firmware to latest version to ensure the accuracy of the table below. Here we recommend HDD of 500GB to 4TB capacity.

Manufacturer	Series	Model	Capacity	Port Mode
Seagate	Video 3.5	ST1000VM002	1TB	SATA
Seagate	Video 3.5	ST2000VM003	2TB	SATA
Seagate	Video 3.5	ST3000VM002	3TB	SATA
Seagate	Video 3.5	ST4000VM000	4TB	SATA
Seagate	SV35	ST1000VX000	1TB	SATA
Seagate	SV35	ST2000VX000	2TB	SATA
Seagate	SV35	ST3000VX000	3TB	SATA
Seagate	SV35 (Support HDD	ST1000VX002	1TB	SATA
	data recovery offered by			
	Seagate)			
Seagate	SV35 (Support HDD	ST2000VX004	2TB	SATA
	data recovery offered by			
	Seagate)			
Seagate	SV35 (Support HDD	ST3000VX004	3TB	SATA
	data recovery offered by			
	Seagate)			
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST1000VX001	1TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST1000VX005	1TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST2000VX003	2TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST2000VX008	2TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST3000VX006	3TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST3000VX010	3TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST4000VX000	4TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST4000VX007	4TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST5000VX0001	5TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST6000VX0001	6TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST6000VX0023	6TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST6000VX0003	6TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST8000VX0002	8TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST8000VX0022	8TB	SATA

Manufacturer	Series	Model	Capacity	Port Mode
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST100000VX0004	10TB	SATA
Seagate	SkyHawk HDD	ST1000VX003	1TB	SATA
	(Support HDD data			
	recovery offered by			
	Seagate)			
Seagate	(Support HDD data	ST2000VX005	2TB	SATA
	recovery offered by			
	Seagate)			
Seagate	(Support HDD data	ST3000VX005	3TB	SATA
	recovery offered by			
	Seagate)			
Seagate	(Support HDD data	ST4000VX002	4TB	SATA
	recovery offered by			
•	Seagate)			
Seagate	(Support HDD data	ST5000VX0011	5TB	SATA
	recovery offered by			
Quanta	Seagate)		OTD	0.070
Seagate	(Support HDD data	ST6000VX0011	6TB	SATA
	recovery offered by			
Socato	Seagate) (Support HDD data	ST8000VX0012	8TB	SATA
Seagate	recovery offered by	310000770012	OID	SATA
	Seagate)			
WD	WD Green	WD10EURX (EOL)	1TB	SATA
WD	WD Green	WD20EURX (EOL)	2TB	SATA
WD	WD Green	WD30EURX (EOL)	3TB	SATA
WD	WD Green	WD40EURX (EOL)	4TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD10PURX	1TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD20PURX	2TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD30PURX	3TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD40PURX	4TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD50PURX	5TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD60PURX	6TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD80PUZX	8TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD10PURZ	1TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD20PURZ	2TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD30PURZ	3TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD40PURZ	4TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD50PURZ	5TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD60PURZ	6TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD80PURZ	8TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD4NPURX	4TB	SATA
WD	WD Purple	WD6NPURX	6TB	SATA
TOSHIBA	Mars	DT01ABA100V	1TB	SATA
TOSHIBA	Mars	DT01ABA200V	2TB	SATA

Manufacturer	Series	Model	Capacity	Port Mode
TOSHIBA	Mars	DT01ABA300V	3TB	SATA
TOSHIBA	Sonance	MD03ACA200V	2TB	SATA
TOSHIBA	Sonance	MD03ACA300V	3TB	SATA
TOSHIBA	Sonance	MD03ACA400V	4TB	SATA
TOSHIBA	Sonance	MD04ABA400V	4TB	SATA
TOSHIBA	Sonance	MD04ABA500V	5TB	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST1000NM0033	1TB	SATA
	(SATA interface)			
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST2000NM0033	2TB	SATA
	(SATA interface)			
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST3000NM0033	3TB	SATA
	(SATA interface)			
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST4000NM0033	4TB	SATA
	(SATA interface)			
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST1000NM0055	1TB	SATA
	(SATA interface)			
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST2000NM0055	2TB	SATA
	(SATA interface)			
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST3000NM0005	3TB	SATA
	(SATA interface)			
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST4000NM0035	4TB	SATA
	(SATA interface)			
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST6000NM0115	6TB	SATA
	(SATA interface)			
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST8000NM0055	8TB	SATA
	(SATA interface)			
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST10000NM0016	10TB	SATA
	(SATA interface)			
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST4000NM0024	4TB	SATA
	(SATA interface)			
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST6000NM0024	6TB	SATA
	(SATA interface)			
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST1000NM0023	1TB	SATA
0	(SAS interface)			0.070
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST2000NM0023	2TB	SATA
Ocerete	(SAS interface)	0700001040000		0.474
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST3000NM0023	3TB	SATA
Soorato	(SAS interface)	ST4000NIM0000	4TB	S ATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SAS interface)	ST4000NM0023	410	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST6000NM0014	6TB	SATA
Jeayale	(SAS interface)			
Seagate	Constellation ES series	ST1000NM0045	1TB	SATA
Jeagale	(SAS interface)			

Manufacturer	Series	Model	Capacity	Port Mode
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SAS interface)	ST2000NM0045	2TB	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SAS interface)	ST3000NM0025	ЗТВ	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SAS interface)	ST4000NM0025	4TB	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SAS interface)	ST6000NM0095	6TB	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SAS interface)	ST6000NM0034	6TB	SATA
Seagate	Constellation ES series (SAS interface)	ST8000NM0075	8TB	SATA
WD	WD RE series (SATA interface)	WD1003FBYZ	1TB	SATA
WD	WD RE series (SATA interface)	WD1004FBYZ (replace WD1003FBYZ)	1TB	SATA
WD	WD RE series (SATA interface)	WD2000FYYZ	2TB	SATA
WD	WD RE series (SATA interface)	WD2004FBYZ (replace WD2000FYYZ)	2TB	SATA
WD	WD RE series (SATA interface)	WD3000FYYZ	3TB	SATA
WD	WD RE series (SATA interface)	WD4000FYYZ	4TB	SATA
WD	WD (SATA interface)	WD2000F9YZ	2TB	SATA
WD	WD (SATA interface)	WD3000F9YZ	3TB	SATA
WD	WD (SATA interface)	WD4000F9YZ	4TB	SATA
WD	WD (SATA interface)	WD4002FYYZ	4TB	SATA
WD	WD (SATA interface)	WD6001FSYZ	6TB	SATA
WD	WD (SATA interface)	WD6002FRYZ	6TB	SATA
WD	WD (SATA interface)	WD8002FRYZ	8TB	SATA
HITACHI	Ultrastar series (SATA interface)	HUS724030ALA640	3TB	SATA
HITACHI	Ultrastar series (SATA interface)	HUS726060ALE610	6TB	SATA
HITACHI	Ultrastar series (SATA interface)	HUH728060ALE600	6TB	SATA
HITACHI	Ultrastar series (SATA interface)	HUH728080ALE600	8TB	SATA
HITACHI	Ultrastar series (SAS interface)	HUS726020AL5210	2TB	SATA
HITACHI	Ultrastar series (SAS interface)	HUS726040AL5210	4TB	SATA

Manufacturer	Series	Model	Capacity	Port Mode
HITACHI	Ultrastar series (SAS	HUS726060AL5210	6TB	SATA
	interface)			
Seagate	Pipeline HD Mini	ST320VT000	320GB	SATA
Seagate	Pipeline HD Mini	ST500VT000	500GB	SATA
Seagate	Pipeline HD Mini	ST2000LM003 (EOL)	2TB	SATA
TOSHIBA	2.5-inch PC series	MQ01ABD050V	500GB	SATA
TOSHIBA	2.5-inch PC series	MQ01ABD100V	1TB	SATA
SAMSUNG	HN-M101MBB	HN-M101MBB (EOL)	1TB	SATA
Seagate	2.5-inch enterprise	ST1000NX0313	1TB	SATA
	series			
Seagate	2.5-inch enterprise	ST2000NX0253	2TB	SATA
	series			

## $\square$

Please upgrade the DVR firmware to latest version to ensure the accuracy of the table below. And you can use the USB cable with the model recommended to set USB burner.

Manufacturer	Model	Port Type	Туре
Sony	DRX-S50U	USB	DVD-RW
Sony	DRX-S70U	USB	DVD-RW
Sony	AW-G170S	SATA	DVD-RW
Samsung	TS-H653A	SATA	DVD-RW
Panasonic	SW-9588-C	SATA	DVD-RW
Sony	DRX-S50U	USB	DVD-RW
BenQ	5232WI	USB	DVD-RW

Please refer to the following table form compatible displayer list.				
Brand	Model	Dimension (Unit: inch)		
BENQ (LCD)	ET-0007-TA	19-inch (wide screen)		
DELL (LCD)	E178FPc	17-inch		
BENQ (LCD)	Q7T4	17-inch		
BENQ (LCD)	Q7T3	17-inch		
HFNOVO (LCD)	LXB-L17C	17-inch		
SANGSUNG (LCD)	225BW	22-inch (wide screen)		
HFNOVO (CRT)	LXB-FD17069HB	17-inch		
HFNOVO (CRT)	LXB-HF769A	17-inch		
HFNOVO(CRT)	LX-GJ556D	17-inch		
Samsung (LCD)	2494HS	24-inch		
Samsung (LCD)	P2350	23-inch		
Samsung (LCD)	P2250	22-inch		
Samsung (LCD)	P2370G	23-inch		
Samsung (LCD)	2043	20-inch		
Samsung (LCD)	2243EW	22-inch		
Samsung (LCD)	SMT-1922P	19-inch		
Samsung (LCD)	T190	19-inch		
Samsung (LCD)	T240	24-inch		
LG (LCD)	W1942SP	19-inch		
LG (LCD)	W2243S	22-inch		
LG (LCD)	W2343T	23-inch		
BENQ (LCD)	G900HD	18.5-inch		
BENQ (LCD)	G2220HD	22-inch		
PHILIPS (LCD)	230E	23-inch		
PHILIPS (LCD)	220CW9	23-inch		
PHILIPS (LCD)	220BW9	24-inch		
PHILIPS (LCD)	220EW9	25-inch		

Brand	Model	network working mode	
D-LinK	DES-1016D	10/100M self-adaptive	
D-LinK	DES-1008D	10/100M self-adaptive	
		Five network modes:	
		AUTO	
Ruijie	RG-S1926S	HALF-10M	
Kuljie	KG-319203	FULL-10M	
		HALF-100M	
		FULL-100M	
H3C	H3C-S1024	10/100M self-adaptive	
TP-LINK	TL-SF1016	10/100M self-adaptive	
TP-LINK	TL-SF1008+	10/100M self-adaptive	

## Appendix 7.1 What Is the Surge

Surge is a short current or voltage change during a very short time. In the circuit, it lasts for microsecond. In a 220V circuit, the 5KV or 10KV voltage change during a very short time (about microseconds) can be called a surge. The surge comes from two ways: external surge and internal surge.

- The external surge: The external surge mainly comes from the thunder lightning. Or it comes from the voltage change during the on/off operation in the electric power cable.
- The internal surge: The research finds 88% of the surge from the low voltage comes from the internal of the building such as the air conditioning, elevator, electric welding, air compressor, water pump, power button, duplicating machine and other device of inductive load.

The lightning surge is far above the load level the PC or the micro devices can support. In most cases, the surge can result in electric device chip damage, PC error code, accelerating the part aging, data loss and etc. Even when a small 20 horsepower inductive engine boots up or stops, the surge can reach 3000V to 5000V, which can adversely affect the electronic devices that use the same distribution box.

To protect the device, you need to evaluate its environment, the lighting affection degree objectively. Because surge has close relationship with the voltage amplitude, frequency, network structure, device voltage-resistance, protection level, ground and etc. The thunder proof work shall be a systematic project, emphasizing the all-round protection (including building, transmission cable, device, ground and etc.). There shall be comprehensive management and the measures shall be scientific, reliable, practical and economic. Considering the high voltage during the inductive thundering, the International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) standard on the energy absorbing step by step theory and magnitude classification in the protection zone, you need to prepare multiple precaution levels.

You can use the lightning rod, lightning strap or the lightning net to reduce the damage to the building, personal injury or the property.

The lightning protection device can be divided into three types:

- Power lightning arrester: There are 220V single-phrase lightning arrester and 380V three-phrase lightening arrester (mainly in parallel connection, sometimes use series connection) You can parallel connect the power lightning arrester in the electric cable to reduce the short-time voltage change and release the surge current. From the BUS to the device, there are usually three levels so that system can reduce the voltage and release the current step by step to remove the thunderstorm energy and guarantee the device safety. You can select the replaceable module type, the terminal connection type and portable socket according to your requirement.
- Signal lightning arrester: This device is mainly used in the PC network, communication system. The connection type is serial connection. Once you connected the signal lightning

arrestor with the signal port, it can cut the channel of the thunderstorm to the device, and on the other hand, it can discharge the current to the ground to guarantee the device proper work. The signal lightning arrester has many specifications, and widely used in many devices such as telephone, network, analog communication, digital communication, cable TV and satellite antenna. For all the input port, especially those from the outdoor, you need to install the signal lightning arrester.

• Antenna feed cable lightning arrester: It is suitable for antenna system of the transmitter or the device system to receive the wireless signal. It uses the serial connection too.

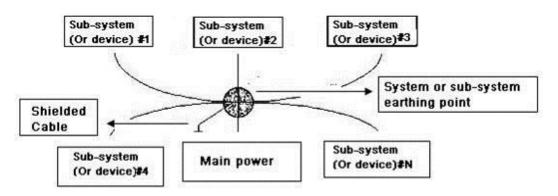
Please note, when you select the lighting arrester, please pay attention to the port type and the earthing reliability. In some important environment, you need to use special shielded cable. Do not parallel connect the thunder proof ground cable with the ground cable of the lightning rod. Please make sure they are far enough and grounded respectively.

## Appendix 7.2 The Earthing Modes

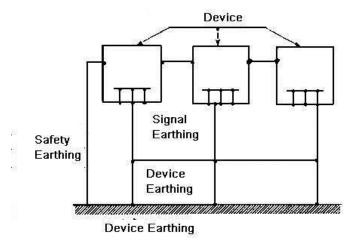
We all know the earthing is the most complicated technology in the electromagnetism compatibility design since there is no systematic theory or module. The earthing has many modes, but the selection depends on the system structure and performance.

The following are some successfully experience from our past work.

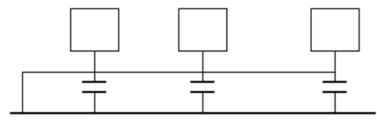
• **One-point ground:** In the following figure you can see there is a one-point ground. This connection provides common point to allow signal to be transmitted in many circuits. If there is no common point, the error signal transmission occurred. In the one-point ground mode, each circuit is just grounded only and they are connected at the same point. Since there is only one common point, there is no circuit and so, there is no interference.



• **Multiple-point ground:** In the following figure, you can see the internal circuit uses the chassis as the common point. While at the same time, all devices chassis use the earthing as the common point. In this connection, the ground structure can provide the lower ground resistance because when there are multiple-point grounds; each ground cable is as short as possible. And the parallel cable connection can reduce the total conductance of the ground conductor. In the high-frequency circuit, you need to use the multiple-point ground mode and each cable needs to connect to the ground. The length shall be less than the 1/20 of the signal wavelength.



 Mixed ground: The mix ground consists of the feature of the one-point ground and multiple-point ground. For example, the power in the system needs to use the one-point ground mode while the radio frequency signal requires the multiple-point ground. So, you can use the following figure to earth. For the direct current (DC), the capacitance is open circuit and the circuit is one-point ground. For the radio frequency signal, the capacitance is conducive and the circuit adopts multiple-point ground.



When connecting devices of huge size (the device physical dimension and connection cable is big comparing with the wave path of existed interference), then there are possibility of interference when the current goes through the chassis and cable. In this situation, the interference circuit path usually lies in the system ground circuit.

When considering the earthing, you need to think about two aspects: One is the system compatibility, and the other is the external interference coupling into the earth circuit, which results in system error. For the external interference is not regular, it is not easy to resolve.

## Appendix 7.3 Thunder Proof Ground Method in the Monitor System

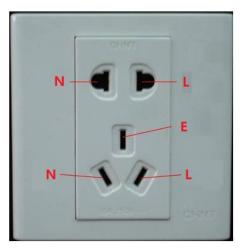
- The monitor system shall have sound thunder proof earthing to guarantee personnel safety and device safety.
- The monitor system working ground resistance shall be less than 1Ω.
- The thunder proof ground shall adopt the special ground cable from the monitor control room to the ground object. The ground cable adopts copper insulation cable or wire and its ground section shall be more than 20mm<sup>2</sup>.
- The ground cable of the monitor system cannot short circuit or mixed connected with the strong alternative current cable.
- For all the ground cables from the control room to the monitor system or ground cable of other monitor devices, please use the copper resistance soft cable and its section shall be

more than 4 mm<sup>2</sup>.

- The monitor system usually can adopt the one-point ground.
- Please connect the ground end of 3-pin socket in the monitor system to the ground port of the system (protection ground cable)

# Appendix 7.4 The Shortcut Way to Check the Electric System by Digital Multimeter

For 220V AC socket, from the top to the bottom, E (ground cable), N (neutral cable), L(live cable). Please refer to the following figure.



There is a shortcut way to check these thee cables connection are standard or not (not the accurate check).

## 

In the following operations, the multimeter range shall be at 750V.

## For E (earth cable)

Turn the digital multimeter to 750V AC, use your one hand to hold the metal end, and then the other hand insert the pen to the E port of the socket. See the following figure. If the multimeter shows 0, then you can see current earth cable connection is standard. If the value is more than 10, then you can know there is inductive current and the earth cable connection is not proper.



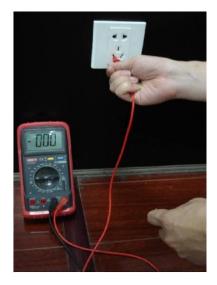
## For L (live cable)

Turn the digital multimeter to 750V AC, use your one hand to hold the metal end, and then the other hand insert the pen to the L port of the socket. See the following figure. If the multimeter shows 125, then you can see current live cable connection is standard. If the value is less than 60, then you can know current live cable connection is not proper or it is not the live cable at all.



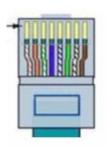
## For N (Neutral cable)

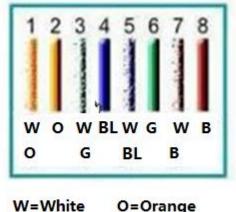
Turn the digital multimeter to 750V AC, use your one hand to hold the metal end, and then the other hand insert the pen to the N port of the socket. See the following figure. If the multimeter shows 0, then you can see current N cable connection is standard. If the value is more than 10, then you can see there is inductive current and the neutral cable connection is not proper. If the value is 120, then you can know that you have misconnected the neutral cable to the live cable.



## Definition

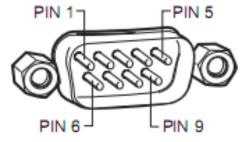
Here we are going to make standard RS-232 port and standard RJ45 (T568B). Please refer to the following figure for RJ45 cable definition.





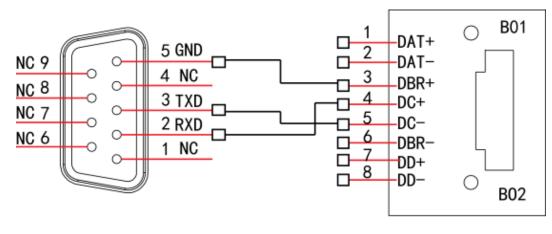
W=White O=Orange BL=Blue G=Green B=Brown

Please refer to the following figure for RS-232 pin definition.



**Cross Connection** 

Please refer to the following figure for connection information.



RS232

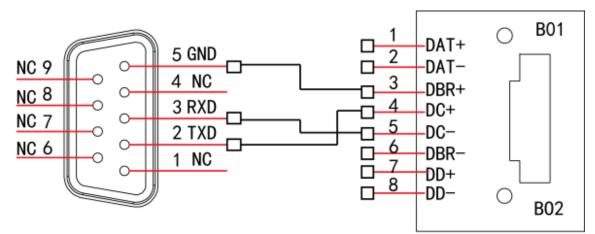
RJ45

Please refer to the following table for detailed crossover cable connection information.

RJ45 (T568B)	RJ45 (Network cable)	RS-232	Signal Description
4	Blue	2	RXD
5	White and blue	3	TXD
3	White and green	5	GND

## Straight Connection

Please refer to the following figure for straight cable connection information.



RS232

**RJ45** 

Please refer to the following table for straight connection information.

RJ45 (T568B)	RJ45 (Network cable)	RS-232	Signal Description
4	Blue	3	RXD
5	White and blue	2	TXD
3	White and green	5	GND

## Appendix 9 Cybersecurity Recommendations

#### Mandatory actions to be taken towards cybersecurity

#### 1. Change Passwords and Use Strong Passwords:

The number one reason systems get "hacked" is due to having weak or default passwords. It is recommended to change default passwords immediately and choose a strong password whenever possible. A strong password should be made up of at least 8 characters and a combination of special characters, numbers, and upper and lower case letters.

#### 2. Update Firmware

As is standard procedure in the tech-industry, we recommend keeping NVR, DVR, and IP camera firmware up-to-date to ensure the system is current with the latest security patches and fixes.

#### "Nice to have" recommendations to improve your network security

#### 1. Change Passwords Regularly

Regularly change the credentials to your devices to help ensure that only authorized users are able to access the system.

#### 2. Change Default HTTP and TCP Ports:

• Change default HTTP and TCP ports for systems. These are the two ports used to communicate and to view video feeds remotely.

• These ports can be changed to any set of numbers between 1025-65535. Avoiding the default ports reduces the risk of outsiders being able to guess which ports you are using.

#### 3. Enable HTTPS/SSL:

Set up an SSL Certificate to enable HTTPS. This will encrypt all communication between your devices and recorder.

#### 4. Enable IP Filter:

Enabling your IP filter will prevent everyone, except those with specified IP addresses, from accessing the system.

#### 5. Change ONVIF Password:

On older IP Camera firmware, the ONVIF password does not change when you change the system's credentials. You will need to either update the camera's firmware to the latest revision or manually change the ONVIF password.

#### 6. Forward Only Ports You Need:

• Only forward the HTTP and TCP ports that you need to use. Do not forward a huge range of numbers to the device. Do not DMZ the device's IP address.

• You do not need to forward any ports for individual cameras if they are all connected to a recorder on site; just the NVR is needed.

#### 7. Disable Auto-Login on SmartPSS:

Those using SmartPSS to view their system and on a computer that is used by multiple people should disable auto-login. This adds a layer of security to prevent users without the appropriate credentials from accessing the system.

#### 8. Use a Different Username and Password for SmartPSS:

In the event that your social media, bank, email, etc. account is compromised, you would not want someone collecting those passwords and trying them out on your video surveillance system. Using a different username and password for your security system will make it more difficult for someone to guess their way into your system.

### 9. Limit Features of Guest Accounts:

If your system is set up for multiple users, ensure that each user only has rights to features and functions they need to use to perform their job.

### 10. UPnP:

• UPnP will automatically try to forward ports in your router or modem. Normally this would be a good thing. However, if your system automatically forwards the ports and you leave the credentials defaulted, you might end up with unwanted visitors.

• If you manually forwarded the HTTP and TCP ports in your router/modem, this feature should be turned off regardless. Disabling UPnP is recommended when the function is not used in real applications.

#### 11. SNMP:

Disable SNMP if you are not using it. If you are using SNMP, you should do so only temporarily, for tracing and testing purposes only.

#### 12. Multicast:

Multicast is used to share video streams between two recorders. Currently there are no known issues involving Multicast, but if you are not using this feature, deactivation can enhance your network security.

#### 13. Check the Log:

If you suspect that someone has gained unauthorized access to your system, you can check the system log. The system log will show you which IP addresses were used to login to your system and what was accessed.

## 14. Physically Lock Down the Device:

Ideally, you want to prevent any unauthorized physical access to your system. The best way to achieve this is to install the recorder in a lockbox, locking server rack, or in a room that is behind a lock and key.